

2<sup>nd</sup>  
edition

# Korean made easy

Seung-eun Oh

for **Everyday Life**

- ★ The everyday life book of the best-selling *Korean Made Easy* series
- ★ 50 common expressions for daily conversations
- ★ 24 real-life conversations with illustrations
- ★ Easy to understand grammar, vocabulary, and pronunciation information
- ★ Includes up-to-date practical information on living in Korea and Korean culture

Free MP3  
Download



## Korean Made Easy for Everyday Life **2nd edition**

<b>Author</b>	Seung-eun Oh
<b>Translator</b>	Michael Park, Isabel Kim Dzitac
<b>Proofreader</b>	Isabel Kim Dzitac
<b>e-Published</b>	February, 2023
<b>Publisher</b>	Kyu-do Chung
<b>Editor</b>	Suk-hee Lee, Hyeon-soo Lee, Da-heuin Baek
<b>Design</b>	Na-kyoung Kim, Mi-jeong Yoon
<b>Illustrator</b>	Moon-su Kim
<b>Voice Actor</b>	So-yun Shin, Rae-whan Kim, Word Cameron Lee
<b>Sources of photos</b>	p. 266, 2020 부산국제영화제 포스터, 부산국제영화제 제공 p. 266, 2023 광주 비엔날레 포스터, (재)광주비엔날레 제공 p. 266, 2019 보령 머드축제 포스터, Boryeong Festival Tourism Foundation 제공

 **DARAKWON** Published by Darakwon Inc.

Darakwon Bldg., 211, Munbal-ro, Paju-si, Gyeonggi-do, Republic of Korea 10881  
Tel: 82-2-736-2031 (Sales Dept. ext.: 250~252; Book Publishing Dept. ext. 420~426)  
Fax: 82-2-732-2037

Copyright©2022, 2008, Seung-eun Oh

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying or otherwise, without the prior consent of the copyright owner.

**Price: 13,500won** (Free MP3 Download)

**ISBN: 978-89-277-6635-3 15710**

---

<http://www.darakwon.co.kr>

<http://koreanbooks.darakwon.co.kr>

※ Visit the Darakwon homepage to learn about our other publications and promotions and to download the contents of the book in MP3 format.



**Seung-eun Oh**

# Preface


〈Korean Made Easy〉 시리즈는 제2언어 혹은 외국어로서 한국어를 공부하는 학습자를 위해 집필되었다. 특히 이 책은 시간적·공간적 제약으로 인해 정규 한국어 교육을 받을 수 없었던 학습자를 위해 혼자서도 한국어를 공부할 수 있도록 기획되었다. 〈Korean Made Easy〉 시리즈는 초판 발행 이후 오랜 시간 독자의 사랑과 지지를 받으며 전 세계 다양한 언어로 번역되어 한국어 학습에 길잡이 역할을 했다고 생각한다. 이번에 최신 문화를 반영하여 예문을 길고 연습 문제를 보완하여 개정판을 출판하게 되어 저자로서 크나큰 보람을 느낀다. 한국어를 공부하려는 모든 학습자가 〈Korean Made Easy〉를 통해 효과적으로 한국어를 공부하면서 즐길 수 있기를 바란다.

시리즈 중 〈Korean Made Easy for Everyday Life〉는 한글을 익히고 시제와 같은 기본적인 학습을 마친 학습자(학습 시간 150~400시간)를 대상으로, 한국에서 살면서 겪을 수 있는 다양한 상황을 중심으로 자연스럽게 한국어를 사용할 수 있도록 고안되었다. 따라서 이 책에서는 학습자가 일상생활에서 자주 접하는 대화를 먼저 제시하고, 그 대화 맥락에서 공부할 수 있는 어휘나 문법과 같은 언어적 요소를 익혀, 궁극적으로는 문법과 대화를 확장하면서 의사소통을 향상시키는 데 초점을 두었다. 한국 생활이나 한국 문화에 대한 설명도 학습자가 한국에서 생활하면서 한국 사회 문화를 더 잘 이해할 수 있도록 고려하였다.

〈Korean Made Easy for Everyday Life〉는 크게 Part 1과 Part 2로 구성되어 있다. Part 1은 실생활에서 자주 사용되는 50개 표현을 10개 과로 제시하였다. 각 상황별로 다섯 가지 유용한 표현을 선정하여 제시하는데, 한국인이 어떤 맥락에서 이런 표현들을 사용하는지 자세한 설명을 덧붙여 학습자의 이해를 돕고 대화 연습을 통해 실제 생활에서 바로 적용할 수 있도록 하였다. Part 2는 여행, 일, 공부 등으로 한국에서 생활하는 6명의 외국인을 설정하여 한국에서 직접 겪을 만한 대화 상황을 24개의 장면으로 구성하였다. 각 장면에서 제시된 대화의 어휘와 발음, 문법, 문화적 정보는 학습자가 한국인과 의사소통하는 데 적극적으로 사용할 수 있도록 하였다.

이 책은 많은 분의 관심과 도움으로 출간하게 되었다. 먼저, 초판에서 필자의 의도가 이 책에 충실히 반영될 수 있도록 명확한 번역과 교정을 해주신 번역가 Michael Park 씨께 감사 드린다. 자신의 가르친 경험을 토대로 조언을 해 준 동료 교사 오승민 선생님과 자신의 한국어 학습 경험으로 조언하고 초판 교정을 꼼꼼하게 봐 주신 Tauri Gregory 씨, Brian Yang 씨께도 깊은 감사를 드린다. 이 책의 개정판에서 번역과 교정을 훌륭하게 해주신 Isabel Kim Dzitic 씨께도 진심으로 감사드리고 싶다. 또한 한국어 교육에 많은 애정과 관심을 보여 주시는 (주)다락원의 정규도 사장님과 좋은 책을 만들고자 여러모로 애써 주신 한국어출판부의 편집진들께도 진심으로 감사의 말씀을 전한다. 마지막으로, 언제나 곁에서 저를 격려해 주시는 어머니께, 그리고 하늘에서 큰딸을 응원해 주시는 아버지께 이 책을 바치고 싶다.

오승은



The *Korean Made Easy* series is written for learners who are studying Korean as a second language or a foreign language. In particular, this book was designed so that learners who cannot receive regular Korean language education due to time and space limitations can study Korean independently. The *Korean Made Easy* series has been loved and supported by learners for a long time since the publication of the first edition and has been translated into various languages around the world, serving as a guide to learning Korean. I feel very rewarded as the author to publish a revised version that adds example sentences and practice questions that reflect the latest cultural trends. I hope that all learners who want to study Korean can enjoy their learning experience while studying Korean effectively through *Korean Made Easy*.

*Korean Made Easy for Everyday Life* was designed to help learners use Korean naturally, focusing on various situations you may experience while living in Korea. It is aimed at learners (150~400 hours of study time) who have mastered hangeul and have completed learning the basics of tenses. In this book, the learner is first acquainted with conversations frequently encountered in daily life, presented with linguistic elements such as vocabulary and grammar that can be studied in the context of the conversation, and introduced to grammatical and linguistic features that improve communication. Korean life and Korean culture are also explained so that learners can better understand Korean society and culture while living in Korea.

*Korean Made Easy for Everyday Life* is composed of two parts: Part 1 and Part 2. Part 1 presents 50 expressions frequently used in real life in 10 scenes. Five useful expressions are selected and presented in each situation, and detailed explanations of the context in which Koreans use these expressions are added to help learners not only understand but also apply them in real life through conversation practice. Part 2 consists of 24 Scenes of conversations that 6 foreigners who live in Korea for travel, work, and study experience. The vocabulary, pronunciation, grammar, and cultural information of the conversations presented in each Scene were carefully selected so that learners can similarly communicate actively with Koreans.

This book was published thanks to the interest and help of many people. First of all, I would like to thank Michael Park for translating, proofreading, and conveying my thoughts in the first edition. I would also like to express my deepest gratitude to my colleague Seungmin Oh, who gave advice based on her teaching experience, and Tauri Gregory and Brian Yang who carefully reviewed the first edition while providing advice based on their Korean learning experience. I would also like to express my heartfelt thanks to Isabel Kim Dzitac for her excellence in translating and proofreading this revised edition. In addition, I would like to express my sincere gratitude to the President of Darakwon, Kyu-do Chung, who has shown great affection and care about Korean language education, and to the editors of the Korean Publishing Department, who worked hard to create a good book. Finally, I would like to dedicate this book to my mother, who has always stood by my side and encouraged me along the way, and to my father, who has been supporting her eldest daughter from heaven.

Seung-eun Oh

# How to Use This Book

## Part 1

Part 1 consists of 50 of the most essential everyday expressions in 10 different situations and puts each of them into conversation practice in three different settings.

### 50 Useful Expressions

It introduces five of the most essential everyday expressions in 10 different units. Each expression is recorded twice by professional male and female voice actors so that learners may learn the correct pronunciation and natural accents of native Koreans. You can listen via MP3 or QR code.

Unit 01 Greetings when meeting for the first time	50 Useful Expressions
안녕하세요?	<p>Hi / Hello!</p> <p>In Korea, you can greet people by simply saying <b>안녕하세요?</b> whether it is in the morning, afternoon, or evening. However, if you are in a business meeting or giving a public speech, you can use <b>안녕하십니까?</b> instead. It sounds a little formal tone.</p>
처음 뵙겠습니다.	<p>Nice to meet you. (It's my first time meeting you for the first time.)</p> <p>When meeting someone for the first time, you can use <b>처음 뵙겠습니다</b> to emphasize that this time you have met each other. If you are in a business meeting, you should use this greeting and then introduce yourself by providing your location and address instead of an <b>이름</b> (name) card in Korea. When introducing yourself by name for a formal occasion, you should say your full name first and add <b>안녕하세요</b> (Hi).</p>
잘 부탁드립니다.	<p>I hope we get along well together. (It will be in your debt.)</p> <p>After you introduce yourself, you can use <b>잘 부탁드립니다</b> with a slight bow. This expression is often used in business or personal relationships. It can be derived from the meaning of this greeting. Korean people value relationships with others. Hence, they use this expression when they have more experience to show that they are a good and productive relationship. The phrase <b>안녕하십니까</b> is used as if the speaker is asking for a special favor. However, in real life, it is simply an expression of courtesy and thankfulness towards someone.</p>
반갑습니다.	<p>Pleased to meet you.</p> <p><b>반갑습니다</b> is an expression commonly used after introducing oneself after introducing oneself initially in the above expression. <b>반갑습니다</b> is much more friendly and less formal compared to <b>안녕하십니까</b> in a lot of opportunities. You can use this expression to greet and greet someone else. In practice, it is often accompanied by a handshake.</p>
성함이 어떻게 되세요?	<p>What is your name? (formal)</p> <p>When you want to ask someone for their name, it is often better to use <b>성함이 어떻게 되세요?</b> instead of <b>이름이 뭐예요?</b> This can be used mostly for asking <b>이름이 뭐예요?</b> in a casual setting, you can use <b>이름이 뭐예요?</b> instead. However, if the other person is clearly older than you or is of higher status, you should always use <b>성함이 어떻게 되세요?</b></p>

### The Actual Meaning and Use of Useful Expressions





The actual meaning and use of useful expressions are explained in detail. This explanation shows in what contexts you can use useful expressions and how the useful expressions are used differently depending on the context of their use and their relationship to the participants of the conversation.

### Conversation

This section shows how five expressions are used in real-life conversations. Each conversation can be heard via MP3 or QR code.

### Try it Out

This section is for practicing each expression through role-play. Learners can speak as a given character in a specific situation and check their answers via the MP3 sound file. You can listen via MP3 or QR code.

<p><b>Conversation 1</b> Introducing yourself in a casual setting</p> <p>001 안녕하세요? 저는 마크입니다. 성함이 어떻게 되세요? 002 저는 김민수라고 합니다. 003 반갑습니다. 004 반갑습니다.</p> 	<p><b>Conversation 3</b> Introducing your friend in the company and office</p> <p>001 제 친구를 소개해 드리겠습니다. 이것은 켈 브라운 씨입니다. 002 안녕하세요? 003 이것은 마유진 씨입니다. 004 안녕하세요? 반갑습니다.</p> 
<p><b>Conversation 2</b> Introducing yourself in a formal situation</p> <p>001 안녕하세요? 저는 마크입니다. 성함이 어떻게 되세요? 002 처음 뵙겠습니다. 김민수라고 합니다. 003 잘 부탁드립니다. 004 반갑습니다.</p> 	<p><b>Try it Out</b></p> <p>In this practice section, you will act as Mark, who is having a conversation with Minju. Mark is greeting Minju for the first time.</p> <p>안녕하세요? 처음 뵙겠습니다. 저는 김민수라고 합니다. 저는 마크라고 합니다. 반갑습니다.</p> 

## Part 2

Part 2 consists of 24 episodes from six foreigners in six different situations. Each foreigner experiences four short stories about living in Korea, applying essential grammar and practical vocabulary in each Scene in order to learn how to communicate with Koreans.

### Scene

This indicates the location and situation of the conversation, explaining the background of each Scene.

### Action

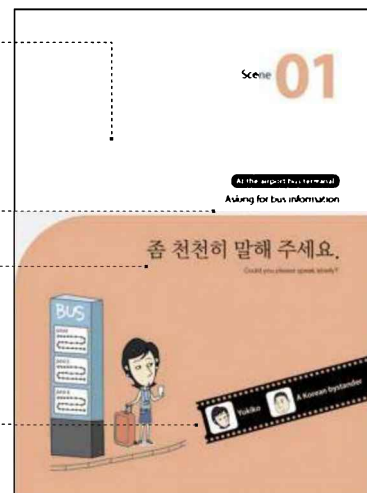
This indicates the main action in the conversation, explaining the primary objective. It also helps learners know where and when to actively participate in real-life conversation.

### Title

This shows the main focus of each Scene, explaining its grammar and practical use.

### Characters

This introduces the characters in each Scene explaining learners understand the background of the story more easily.



Conversation

1. How do I get to the airport?  
2. How do I get to the airport from here?  
3. How do I get to the airport from here?  
4. How do I get to the airport from here?  
5. How do I get to the airport from here?  
6. How do I get to the airport from here?

MP3: 01-01.mp3  
MP3: 01-02.mp3  
MP3: 01-03.mp3  
MP3: 01-04.mp3  
MP3: 01-05.mp3  
MP3: 01-06.mp3

### Listening Material

The conversation is recorded as an MP3 file in two versions. One is a slow recorded version that is easy for learners to understand, and the other is recorded at a speed that can be heard in real life. MP3 files can be heard via MP3 or QR code.

### Conversation

This section visually presents a conversation situation that the learner may encounter.

### English Translation

This section is the English translation of the conversation. The translation is focused on a natural presentation rather than a literal, word-to-word translation. Literal translations are marked with parentheses.

### New Vocabulary

This section introduces new vocabulary with English translations.

### New Expressions

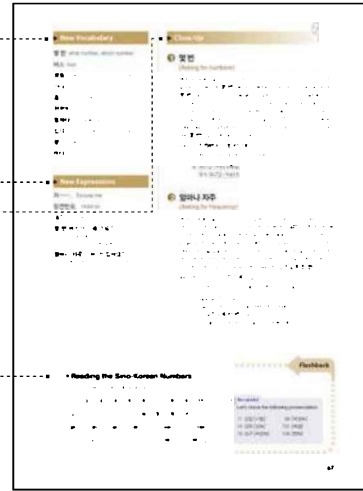
This section shows new expressions with English translations.

### Close-Up

This section explains the specific grammatical points or parts that need further explanation from the main conversation.

### Flashback

This section reviews the essential points from *Korean Made Easy for Beginners*, which have not been selected as part of the learning objectives in this book.



### Grammar in Focus

#### The imperative -(으)세요 and -지 마세요

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

▶ **배우세요.** Please learn.

▶ **배우지 마세요.** Please don't learn.

▶ **배우십시오.** Please learn.

▶ **배우시지 마십시오.** Please don't learn.

예를 들어, '배우세요'는 '배우십시오'와 같은 의미입니다. (For example, '배우세요' has the same meaning as '배우십시오'.)

하지만, '배우지 마세요'는 '배우시지 마십시오'와 같은 의미입니다. (However, '배우지 마세요' has the same meaning as '배우시지 마십시오'.)

▶ **배우세요.** Please learn.

▶ **배우지 마세요.** Please don't learn.

▶ **배우십시오.** Please learn.

▶ **배우시지 마십시오.** Please don't learn.

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

이제부터는 영어를 배우는 것보다 먼저 한국어를 배우는 것이 중요합니다. (From now on, it is more important to learn Korean than to learn English.)

### Grammar in Focus

This section explains the main grammar point in detail, showing its meaning, pattern, and usage. Various examples will help learners understand the grammar more easily.

The ★ indicates irregular form.

### Grammar Chart

This indicates the page containing a detailed grammar pattern table in the appendix.

### Be careful!

This section helps learners understand difficult grammar points and how to correct common mistakes.

### Quiz Yourself!

This section is for practicing grammar points, with various exercises ranging from easy to difficult.

★ Answers for the quiz are in the appendix.





### Grammar Rehearsal

This section is designed for learners to practice and expand upon the grammar they have learned as a learning objective. Through Grammar Rehearsal, learners can practice using grammar that can be used in conversations and other situations beyond the use of grammar limited to conversational situations. Grammar Rehearsal is recorded as an MP3, and you can listen to the audio via MP3 or QR code.



### Additional Vocabulary

This section introduces supplemental vocabulary selected for each scenario.

### Conversation Rehearsal

This section expands on the previously presented conversation by introducing additional conversations. As such, the learner can continue practicing conversations via MP3 or QR code.



### Pronunciation Tip

This section explains the specific rules of pronunciation for hard-to-pronounce words in the conversation. Each word is recorded twice for learners to repeat the pronunciation via MP3 or QR code.

### Coffee Break

This section introduces helpful real-life information regarding the given conversation situation.

### Director's Commentary

This section introduces practical information about life in Korea and helps learners familiarize themselves with the unique cultural perspective of the Korean people.



# Contents

Preface .....	04
How to Use This Book .....	06
Contents .....	10
Table of Contents .....	12
Main Characters .....	17

## Part 1 50 Useful Expressions

Unit 01	Greetings when meeting for the first time .....	20
Unit 02	Expressing gratitude and apology .....	24
Unit 03	Expressing your thoughts .....	28
Unit 04	Responding to others .....	32
Unit 05	Greetings in everyday life .....	36
Unit 06	Expressions at the dinner table .....	40
Unit 07	Congratulating, consoling, and encouraging .....	44
Unit 08	Talking on the telephone .....	48
Unit 09	Asking someone to repeat .....	52
Unit 10	Saying goodbye .....	56

## Part 2 24 Scenes in Everyday Life

### Chapter 1 Beginning your journey in Korea

Scene 01	좀 천천히 말해 주세요. Could you please speak slowly? .....	65
Scene 02	반대쪽에서 타세요. Take the train on the opposite side. ....	73
Scene 03	외국인이세요? Are you a foreigner? .....	81
Scene 04	이쪽으로 쭉 가면 오른쪽에 편의점이 있어요. If you go straight this way, there is a convenience store on the right. ....	89

### Chapter 2 Preparing the necessary items for living in Korea

Scene 05	외국인 등록증을 신청하고 싶어요. I want to apply for a foreigner registration card. ....	99
Scene 06	지금 이 집을 볼 수 있어요? Can I view this house now? .....	107
Scene 07	얼마 동안 돈을 내야 돼요? For how long do I have to pay? .....	115
Scene 08	제가 매운 음식을 못 먹어요. I can't eat spicy food. ....	123

### Chapter 3 Making appointments with friends in Korea

Scene 09	우리 같이 영화 볼까요? Do you want to see a movie together? .....	133
Scene 10	내일 친구들과하고 영화를 보려고 해요. I'm going to see a movie with my friends tomorrow. ....	141
Scene 11	사람이 많아서 유진 씨가 안 보여요. I can't see you, Yujin, because there are too many people here. ....	149
Scene 12	죄송합니다. 지금 빵이 없습니다. Sorry. There is no bread right now. ....	157

### Chapter 4 Adapting to life in Korea

Scene 13	더 싼 거 있어요? Is there anything cheaper? .....	167
Scene 14	너무 짧지 않게 잘라 주세요. Please, cut it so that it is not too short. ....	175
Scene 15	토요일에 하지만 일요일에 쉽니다. We are open on Saturdays but closed on Sundays. ....	183
Scene 16	비행기로 보내시겠어요? Would you like to send it by plane? .....	191

### Chapter 5 Working out problems

Scene 17	열도 있고 콧물도 나요. I have a fever and a runny nose. ....	201
Scene 18	옷이 조금 크니까 한 치수 작은 사이즈로 주세요. The clothing is a little big, so could you give me one size smaller? .....	209
Scene 19	이따가 출발할 때 연락해 주세요. Please contact me when he leaves later. ....	217
Scene 20	가방을 잃어버렸는데 어떻게 해야 돼요? I lost my bag, what should I do? .....	225

### Chapter 6 Traveling in Korea

Scene 21	방을 예약했는데 확인해 주시겠어요? Could you please confirm the room that I reserved? .....	235
Scene 22	돌아오는 배가 몇 시에 있어요? What time is the return ship? .....	243
Scene 23	'바다' 식당에 가 보세요. Go to the restaurant 'Bada'. ....	251
Scene 24	한국에서 여행해 봤어요? Have you traveled in Korea? .....	259

## Appendix

Grammar Chart .....	268
Answers .....	277
Index .....	280

Unit	Topic	Expressions	Conversation
01	Greetings when meeting for the first time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>안녕하세요? Hi! / Hello!</li> <li>처음 뵙겠습니다. Nice to meet you. (lit. I am meeting you for the first time.)</li> <li>잘 부탁드립니다. I hope we get along well together. (lit. I will be in your debt.)</li> <li>반갑습니다. Pleased to meet you.</li> <li>성함이 어떻게 되세요? What is your name? [honorific]</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Introducing oneself in a casual meeting</li> <li>Introducing oneself in a formal meeting</li> <li>Introducing your friend to the person next to you</li> </ul>
02	Expressing gratitude and apology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>감사합니다. Thank you.</li> <li>별말씀을요. Don't mention it.</li> <li>죄송합니다. I'm sorry.</li> <li>괜찮아요. It's all right.</li> <li>실례합니다. Excuse me.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Expressing gratitude</li> <li>Expressing apology</li> <li>Talking to a stranger</li> </ul>
03	Expressing your thoughts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>알겠습니다. I see. / I understand. / Yes, sir.</li> <li>잘 모르겠는데요. I don't understand. / I don't know. / I'm not sure.</li> <li>아니요, 잘못해요. No, I'm not very good at it.</li> <li>저도 그렇게 생각해요. I think so too.</li> <li>그럼시다. Let's do that.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Expressing that you understand another's request</li> <li>Explaining that you don't have certain information</li> <li>Responding humbly to a compliment</li> </ul>
04	Responding to others	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>좋아요. OK. / That's great.</li> <li>맞아요. That's right. / That's correct.</li> <li>그럼요. Of course. / Sure.</li> <li>아, 그래요? Is that so? / Really?</li> <li>정말이에요요? Is that true? / Really?</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Accepting another's proposal</li> <li>Confirming information</li> <li>Responding to others</li> </ul>
05	Greetings in everyday life	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>잘 지내셨어요? How have you been? (lit. Have you been doing well?)</li> <li>오랜만이에요. It's been a long time.</li> <li>요즘 어떻게 지내세요? How are you doing these days?</li> <li>덕분에 잘 지내요. Thanks to you, I'm doing fine.</li> <li>수고하셨습니다. Good job. / I appreciate your hard work. (lit. You have made a great effort.)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Greeting an acquaintance</li> <li>Greeting a person whom you haven't met for a long time</li> <li>Giving thanks for a service</li> </ul>

Unit	Topic	Expressions	Conversation
06	Expressions at the dinner table	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 맛있게 드세요. Enjoy your meal. (lit. Please eat it deliciously.)</li> <li>• 잘 먹겠습니다. Thank you for the food. / Bon appetit. (used before having a meal. lit. I will eat well.)</li> <li>• 잘 먹었습니다. Thank you for the food. (used after a meal. lit. I ate well.)</li> <li>• 아니요, 괜찮아요. No, thank you. (lit. No, it's alright.)</li> <li>• 초대해 주셔서 감사합니다. Thank you for inviting me.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Before eating</li> <li>• After finishing the meal</li> <li>• Leaving a party</li> </ul>
07	Congratulating, consoling, and encouraging	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 축하합니다. Congratulations.</li> <li>• 제가 한턱낼게요. I'll treat you. / It's on me. / I'll get it (the bill).</li> <li>• 힘드시겠어요. It must be difficult for you.</li> <li>• 걱정하지 마세요. Don't worry.</li> <li>• 힘내세요. Cheer up. (lit. Please have more strength.)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Congratulating someone</li> <li>• Consoling a person who is having trouble</li> <li>• Cheering up a worried person</li> </ul>
08	Talking on the telephone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 여보세요? Hello?</li> <li>• 지금 통화 괜찮으세요? Are you available now? (lit. Is it all right to call now?)</li> <li>• 실례지만, 누구세요? Excuse me, who is this?</li> <li>• 잠깐만요. Hold on a minute. / Just a minute.</li> <li>• 전화 잘못 거셨어요. You've called the wrong number.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Making a call</li> <li>• Looking for a person on the phone</li> <li>• Responding to a wrong number</li> </ul>
09	Asking someone to repeat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 네? Excuse me? / I'm sorry?</li> <li>• 뭐라고 하셨어요? Pardon me? (lit. What did you say?)</li> <li>• 못 들었어요. I couldn't hear you.</li> <li>• 다시 한번 말해 주세요. Please, say it one more time.</li> <li>• 잘 안 들려요. I can't hear you well.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you couldn't hear what others are saying</li> <li>• When asking others to repeat what was said</li> <li>• When you can't hear well during a telephone call</li> </ul>
10	Saying goodbye	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 주말 잘 보내세요. Have a nice weekend.</li> <li>• 안녕히 가세요. Goodbye.</li> <li>• 내일 봐요. See you tomorrow.</li> <li>• 몸조리 잘 하세요. Take care of yourself.</li> <li>• 연락할게요. I'll contact you.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Saying goodbye at the end of the week</li> <li>• Saying goodbye when leaving early</li> <li>• Saying goodbye to a sick person</li> </ul>

Scene	Action	Title	Grammar in Focus	Flashback	Additional Vocabulary	Coffee Break	Director's Commentary
<b>Chapter 1</b> Beginning your journey in Korea : Yukiko Yamada							
01	At the airport bus terminal	Asking for bus information	좀 천천히 말해 주세요. Could you please speak slowly?	-아/어 주세요 Could you please...?	Reading Sino-Korean numbers	<b>Vocabulary related to bus</b>	How to read bus numbers From the airport to your destination
02	At a subway station	Asking about subway destinations	반대쪽에서 타세요. Take the train on the opposite side.	The imperative -(으)세요 and -지 마세요	Expressing directions	<b>Vocabulary related to the subway</b>	Direction of the subway lines Seoul's convenient transportation card
03	Inside a subway train	Greeting someone for the first time	외국인이세요? Are you a foreigner?	Honorific -(으)세요	Nationality and language	<b>Vocabulary related to personal information</b>	Various questions about age Korean names
04	On the street	Asking for directions to reach your destination	이쪽으로 쭉 가면 오른쪽에 편의점이 있어요. If you go straight this way, there is a convenience store on the right.	-(으)면 If ...	Expressions for locations	<b>Vocabulary related to the street</b>	Asking for directions How Koreans show courtesy and intimacy
<b>Chapter 2</b> Preparing the necessary items for living in Korea : Mark Robinson							
05	At the immigration office	Applying for a foreigner registration card	외국인 등록증을 신청하고 싶어요. I want to apply for a foreigner registration card.	-고 싶다 want to...	Expressing time based on the present	<b>Vocabulary related to documents</b>	Useful vocabulary to know before visiting the immigration office Taboos in Korean life
06	At the real estate agency	Finding a house	지금 이 집을 볼 수 있어요? Can I view this house now?	-(으)러 수 있다 can	Names for the rooms in a Korean house	<b>Vocabulary related to the house</b>	Paying rent in Korea: 월세, 전세, 연세 Apartment culture in Korea
07	At a phone store	Opening a cell phone account	얼마 동안 돈을 내야 돼요? For how long do I have to pay?	-아/어야 되다 have to, must...	Reading price	<b>Vocabulary related to phones</b>	Another way to read phone numbers The figures on Korean banknotes
08	At a restaurant	Ordering food at a restaurant	제가 매운 음식을 못 먹어요. I can't eat spicy food.	-(으)ㄴ The noun modifier	Adjectives for describing tastes	<b>Vocabulary related to meals</b>	Counting quantities of food Korean food culture: alone and together

Scene	Action	Title	Grammar in Focus	Flashback	Additional Vocabulary	Coffee Break	Director's Commentary	
<b>Chapter 3 Making appointments with friends in Korea : Sam Brown</b>								
09	Over the telephone	Making an appointment by phone	우리 같이 영화 볼까요? Do you want to see a movie together?	-(으)르까요? Shall we...?	Reading the time	Vocabulary related to appointments	Confirming an appointment	Korean popular culture
10	On a video call	Inviting a friend	내일 친구들하고 영화를 보려고 해요. I'm going to see a movie with my friends tomorrow.	-(으)려고 하다 be going to...	Vocabulary related to places	Vocabulary related to calling on the phone	How to say goodbye when ending a phone call	Special foods on special occasions
11	At the meeting place	Changing the meeting place	사람이 많아서 유진 씨가 안 보여요. I can't see you, Yujin, because there are too many people here.	-아/어서 because	Frequently used conjunctions	Expressions often used when making excuses	When you can't hear someone on the phone well	Street food in Korea
12	At a café	Ordering coffee	죄송합니다. 지금 빵이 없습니다. Sorry. There is no bread right now.	The formal form -(스)브니다	Counting words	Vocabulary related to stores	Some expressions to say to store employees	Scenery from a Korean café
<b>Chapter 4 Adapting to life in Korea : Susan Peters</b>								
13	At an electronics store	Comparing electronics	더 싼 거 있어요? Is there anything cheaper?	The comparative 보다 더 and the superlative 제일, 가장	Adjectives with opposite meanings	Vocabulary related to products	Useful expressions for shopping	Korean pronunciation of English words
14	At a beauty salon	Getting a haircut	너무 짧지 않게 잘라 주세요. Please, cut it so that it is not too short.	-게 Changing an adjective into an adverb	Irregular verbs 1: 으 and 르	Vocabulary related to the hair salon	Expressions for styling hair	K-beauty
15	At a gym	Asking for information	토요일에 하지만 일요일에 쉽니다. We are open on Saturdays but closed on Sundays.	-지만 but	Days of the week	Vocabulary related to exercise	Expressions for periods	Holidays in Korea
16	At the post office	Sending a parcel	비행기로 보내시겠어요? Would you like to send it by plane?	Expressing intent: -겠- and -(으)르게요	Reading dates	Vocabulary related to the post office	Registered mail: 등기	Korea's fast delivery service culture

Scene	Action	Title	Grammar in Focus	Flashback	Additional Vocabulary	Coffee Break	Director's Commentary	
<b>Chapter 5</b>		<b>Working out problems : Mei Chang</b>						
17	At a hospital	Explaining symptoms	열도 있고 콧물도 나요. I have a fever and a runny nose.	-고 and	Words for parts of the body	<b>Vocabulary related to symptoms</b>	Titles for doctors and nurses	K-Quarantine: Korea's medical services and medical insurance system
18	At a clothes store	Asking for other clothes	옷이 조금 크니까 한 치수 작은 사이즈로 주세요. The clothing is a little big, so could you give me one size smaller?	Explaining reasons: -(으)니까	Words for colors	<b>Vocabulary related to clothing</b>	Questions about service	The collective culture of Korean people
19	At home	Explaining a problem	이따가 출발할 때 연락해 주세요. Please contact me when he leaves later.	-(으)ㄴ 때 When	Adverbs with opposite meanings	<b>Vocabulary related to repairs</b>	A simple problem situation expression	A Korean culture that emphasizes hierarchical order
20	At the Lost-and-Found	Describing a lost item	가방을 잃어버렸는데 어떻게 해야 돼요? I lost my bag, what should I do?	Explaining a situation: -(으)ㄴ/는데	Frequently used question words	<b>Vocabulary related to one's belongings</b>	Expressions that can be used in urgent situations	Useful services
<b>Chapter 6</b>		<b>Traveling in Korea : Paul Smith</b>						
21	At a hotel	Checking into a hotel	방을 예약했는데 확인해 주시겠어요? Could you please confirm the room that I reserved?	-아/어 주시겠어요? Would/Could you please...?	Expressing time throughout the day	<b>Vocabulary related to accommodations</b>	Expressing the duration of a trip with : 오박 오일	Temple stay: Enjoy meditation at a Korean temple
22	At the ticket booth	Buying a ticket	돌아오는 배가 몇 시에 있어요? What time is the return ship?	-는 The noun modifier	Irregular verbs 2: = omission	<b>Vocabulary related to money</b>	When asking about the first service and the last service	Korea's topography
23	At the travel destination	Receiving must-eat restaurant recommendations	'바다' 식당에 가 보세요. Go to the restaurant 'Bada'.	-아/어 보세요. You should...	Irregular verbs 3: Omission of ㅁ and ㅂ	<b>Vocabulary related to travelling</b>	Taking pictures with Koreans	Means of transportation when traveling domestically
24	While talking to a friend	Talking about travel experiences	한국에서 여행해 봤어요? Have you traveled in Korea?	-아/어 봤다 I have done...	Vocabulary expressing emotions	<b>Vocabulary related to frequency</b>	Sentences with a common question and answer	Famous Korean festivals



# Main Characters



**야마다 유키코 (일본)**

- Yukiko Yamada (Japan)
- Started studying Korean because she is interested in Korean food.
  - Visiting Korea for 3 nights and 4 days.



**마크 로빈슨 (미국)**

- Mark Robinson (USA)
- Came to work in a Korean company.
  - Has been in Korea for six months.



**샘 브라운 (영국)**

- Sam Brown (United Kingdom)
- Started studying Korean because he is interested in Korean movies.
  - Foreign exchange student at a Korean university.



**수잔 피터스 (호주)**

- Susan Peters (Australia)
- Teaches English in Korea.
  - Has lived in Korea for more than 2 years.



**장메이 (중국)**

- Mei Chang (China)
- Started studying Korean to study abroad at a Korean university.
  - Currently studying for admission to a Korean university.



**폴 스미스 (캐나다)**

- Paul Smith (Canada)
- Started studying Korean as a hobby.
  - Loves to travel so he travels every weekend.



**김진수 (한국)**

- Jinsu Kim (Korea)
- A university student who gets along well with foreign friends.
  - Studying to prepare for a job.



**이유진 (한국)**

- Yujin Lee (Korea)
- A university student who is studying English through a language exchange with her foreign friend.
  - Preparing to study abroad.

# Part 1

## **50 Useful Expression**

- Unit **01** Greetings when meeting for the first time
- Unit **02** Expressing gratitude and apology
- Unit **03** Expressing your thoughts
- Unit **04** Responding to others
- Unit **05** Greetings in everyday life
- Unit **06** Expressions at the dinner table
- Unit **07** Congratulating, consoling, and encouraging
- Unit **08** Talking on the telephone
- Unit **09** Asking someone to repeat
- Unit **10** Saying goodbye



01 안녕하세요?

02 처음 뵙겠습니다.

03 잘 부탁드립니다.

04 반갑습니다.

05 성함이 어떻게 되세요?

**01 Hi! / Hello!**

In Korea, you can greet people by merely saying 안녕하세요? whether it is in the morning, afternoon, or evening. However, if you are in a business meeting or giving a public speech, you can use 안녕하십니까? instead. It provides a more formal tone.

**02 Nice to meet you. (lit. I am meeting you for the first time.)**

When meeting someone for the first time, you can first say 처음 뵙겠습니다 to emphasize the fact that you have not met previously. If you are in a business meeting, you should use this greeting and then introduce yourself by presenting your business card (often referred to as a 명함 (name card) in Korea). When introducing yourself by name in a formal manner, you should say your full name first and add (이)라고 합니다.

**03 I hope we get along well together. (lit. I will be in your debt.)**

After you introduce yourself, you can say 잘 부탁드립니다 with a slight bow. This expression is often used in business or personal relationships. As can be inferred from the meaning of this greeting, Korean people value relationships with others. Hence, they use this expression when they first meet someone to show their hopes for a good and productive relationship. The literal meaning may sound as if the speaker is asking for a special favor. However, in real life, it is simply an expression customarily used when formally introducing yourself.

**04 Pleased to meet you.**

반갑습니다 is an expression customarily used after introducing oneself similarly to the above expression, 잘 부탁드립니다. It sounds more friendly and less formal compared to 잘 부탁드립니다, so a bow is unnecessary. You can use this expression in casual and formal meetings alike. In practice, it is often accompanied by a handshake.

**05 What is your name? [honorific]**

When you want to ask someone for their name, it is often better to use 성함 (an honorific word for name) than 이름. You can use this word politely by asking 성함이 어떻게 되세요. In a casual meeting, you can use 이름이 어떻게 되세요 instead. However, if the other person is much older than you or is of higher status, you should always use 성함이 어떻게 되세요.

## Conversation 1

### Introducing oneself in a casual meeting



track 002

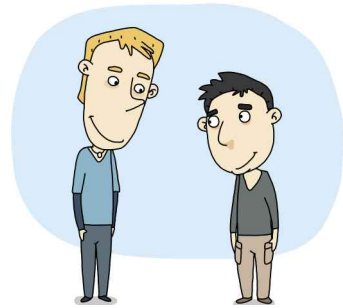
- 마크 안녕하세요? 저는 마크입니다.  
성함이 어떻게 되세요?
- 진수 저는 김진수라고 합니다.
- 마크 반갑습니다.
- 진수 반갑습니다.

Mark Hi. I'm Mark. What's your name?

Jinsu I'm Kim Jinsu.

Mark Pleased to meet you.

Jinsu Pleased to meet you.



## Conversation 2

### Introducing oneself in a formal meeting

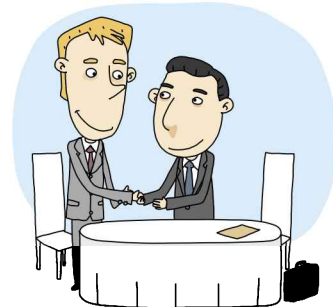


track 003

- 마크 안녕하십니까?  
저는 마크 로빈슨이라고 합니다.  
잘 부탁드립니다.
- 동호 처음 뵙겠습니다.  
이동호라고 합니다.  
잘 부탁드립니다.

Mark Hello. I'm Mark Robinson.  
I hope we get along well together.

Dongho I'm glad to see you for the first time. I'm Lee Dongho. I hope we get along well together.



### Conversation 3

### Introducing your friend to the person next to you



track 004

마크 제 친구를 소개해 드리겠습니다.

이분은 샘 브라운 씨입니다.

샘 안녕하세요?

마크 이분은 이유진 씨입니다.

유진 안녕하세요? 반갑습니다.

Mark Let me introduce my friend. This is Mr. Sam Brown.

Sam Hello.

Mark This is Ms. Lee Yujin.

Yujin Hi. Pleased to meet you.



### Try it Out

In this practice exercise, you will act as Mark, who is having a conversation with Minju. Mark is greeting Minju for the first time.



track 005

안녕하세요? 처음 뵙겠습니다.  
저는 최민주라고 합니다.

처음 \_\_\_\_\_.  
저는 마크라고 합니다.

잘 부탁드립니다.



\_\_\_\_\_.



01 감사합니다.

02 별말씀은요.

03 죄송합니다.

04 괜찮아요.

05 실례합니다.



**01 Thank you.**

When politely expressing gratitude, you can say 감사합니다. It is much politer when accompanied by a slight bow. However, if you use it with people who are close to you, such as friends or family members, it will sound too formal. It is better to use the more friendly expression 고마워요 to give thanks to close people instead.

**02 Don't mention it.**

When someone says 감사합니다, you can say 별말씀을요 to convey respect. Literally, it means that there is no need for special mention and is used as a polite response to a thank you. This expression will sound humble and modest. If you find the pronunciation too tricky, you can simply say 아니에요 instead.

**03 I'm sorry.**

When politely expressing regret, generally you can say 죄송합니다. If the other person is older than you or of higher status, you can report it with a slight bow. In casual relationships such as with acquaintances or co-workers in a company, you can use 미안합니다 instead.

**04 It's all right.**

When responding to an apology, you can say 괜찮아요 to express that there is no problem. This expression can be used in several ways. For example, you can use it to ask about another's condition, expressing your concern by asking 괜찮아요? (Are you all right?) with a rising tone at the end. You can also use it to calm down others by saying 괜찮아요 (It is all right) with a slightly declining tone at the end.

**05 Excuse me.**

When politely asking to be excused or calling for attention from someone, you can say 실례합니다 which sounds very formal and courteous. In daily life, 저... is often used to attract another person by making sounds because Korean don't use "you" when calling others.

## Conversation 1 Expressing gratitude



track 007

마크 저……, 길 좀 가르쳐 주세요.

한국인 이쪽으로 가세요.

마크 감사합니다.

한국인 별말씀을요.

Mark Excuse me, could you please show me which way I should go?

Passerby Go this way.

Mark Thank you.

Passerby Don't mention it.



## Conversation 2 Expressing apology



track 008

마크 정말 죄송합니다.

한국인 아니에요.

마크 괜찮으세요?

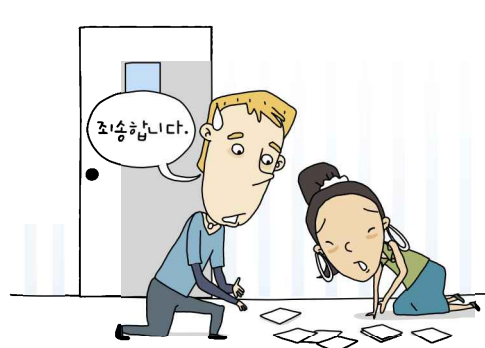
한국인 네, 괜찮아요.

Mark I'm really sorry.

Korean It's all right. (lit. You don't need to be sorry.)

Mark Are you all right?

Korean Yes, I'm all right.



### Conversation 3 Talking to a stranger



track 009

마크 실례합니다.

한국인 네?

마크 좀 지나가겠습니다.

한국인 아, 죄송합니다.

Mark Excuse me.

Bystander Yes?

Mark I'd like to get past.

Bystander Oh, I'm sorry.



### Try it Out

In this practice exercise, you will act as Mark, who is having a conversation with Minju. Mark is asking Minju for water.



track 010

저……, 물 좀 주세요.

여기 있어요.

별말씀을요.





01 알겠습니다.

02 잘 모르겠는데요.

03 아니요, 잘 못해요.

04 저도 그렇게 생각해요.

05 그럼시다.

**01 I see. / I understand. / Yes, sir.**

알겠습니다 has three meanings in common usage. One is to politely express that you know politely what the person is trying to say, as is done with the English phrase “I see.” The second is to show that you understand the subject discussed when concluding a discussion, as in “I understand.” The last use is to confirm that you have understood and will carry out another person’s request as in “Yes, Sir.” When replying to customers or senior staff in a company, you can use this expression. In closer relationships, it is better to use the more friendly form 알겠어요.

**02 I don’t understand. / I don’t know. / I’m not sure.**

This expression also has three meanings. One is to politely express that you don’t understand the subject discussed, as in English, “I don’t understand.” The other is to explain that you do not have the detailed information that the person is asking about, as in “I don’t know.” The last use is to explain that you do not know something for sure, as in, “I’m not sure.” This expression is used in everyday conversation.

**03 No, I’m not very good at it.**

When complimented on one of your abilities, such as speaking a foreign language or cooking, you can respond humbly by saying 아니요, 잘 못해요. In Korea, being humble and modest about one’s ability has traditionally been considered polite and courteous. So even if you know that your performance excels, it is crucial that you do not express overly positive opinions about yourself.

**04 I think so too.**

When agreeing with another person’s opinion in colloquial conversations, you can say 저도 그렇게 생각해요. If you disagree, you can express disagreement indirectly by using 그렇게 생각하세요? (Do you think so?)

**05 Let’s do that.**

그럼시다 is used when discussing an idea with another person and agreeing to the final proposal proposed. This expression gives off a strong sense of formality and is used more often by men than by women when talking to co-workers. In the case of close relationships, you can say 그래요.

## Conversation 1

### Expressing that you understand another's request



track 012

- 유진 저……, 부탁 하나 해도 돼요?  
마크 말씀하세요.  
유진 이거 좀 진수 씨한테 전해 주세요.  
마크 네, 알겠어요.

- Yujin Excuse me, I have a favor to ask.  
Mark Go ahead.  
Yujin Please give this to Jinsu.  
Mark OK, I will.



## Conversation 2

### Explaining that you don't have certain information



track 013

- 마크 덕수궁이 어디에 있어요?  
유키코 프라자 호텔 알아요?  
마크 글썄요, 잘 모르겠는데요.  
유키코 그럼, 시청 알아요?  
마크 네, 알아요.  
유키코 덕수궁은 시청 앞에 있어요.

- Mark Where is Deoksugung Palace?  
Yukiko Do you know the Plaza hotel?  
Mark Um, no, I don't know it.  
Yukiko Then do you know City Hall?  
Mark Yes, I know where that is.  
(lit. Yes, I know.)  
Yukiko Deoksugung Palace is in front of City Hall.



### Conversation 3 Responding humbly to a compliment



track 014

한국인 한국어 정말 잘하시네요.

Korean You speak Korean well.

마크 아니요, 잘 못해요.

Mark No, I'm not very good at it.

한국인 무슨 말씀이에요. 잘하시는데요.

Korean What do you mean? You speak really well.

마크 아직 멀었어요.

Mark I still have a long way to go.



### Try it Out

In this practice exercise, you will act as Mark, who is having a conversation with Minju at the reception desk for a seminar. Mark is explaining that he doesn't know the person whom Minju is asking. Then they are going to greet the person together.



track 015

저분이 누구세요?

글쎄요, \_\_\_\_\_.

그럼, 같이 가서 인사할까요?

\_\_\_\_\_.



01 좋아요.

02 맞아요.

03 그럼요.

04 아, 그래요?

05 정말이에요?



**01 OK. / That's great.**

When accepting another person's proposal in everyday life, you can say 좋아요. To make it sound formal, you can say 좋습니다 instead. Conversely, when turning down someone's proposal, you can say 미안해요 to apologize and then go on to explain the reasons for your refusal.

**02 That's right. / That's correct.**

When answering affirmatively to another person's question on the validity of certain information, you can say 맞아요. When responding negatively, you can use 틀려요 (That's wrong / That's incorrect). If you want to check if you are right, you can ask 맞아요? as a question with a rising intonation at the end. It commonly uses to confirm information that has been discussed, such as telephone numbers or appointment times.

**03 Of course. / Sure.**

When expressing that something is just the way you would expect it to be or is a given, you can use 그럼요. In a formal relationship such as in a company meeting, it is better to use 물론입니다 instead.

**04 Is that so? / Really?**

When learning new information or coming to understand a particular situation, you can respond, by saying 아, 그래요 with a rising tone at the end. It is most often used in colloquial conversations. You can also use it when showing interest in another's story or if you are uncertain of how to respond to it.

**05 Is that true? / Really?**

When it is hard to believe a story that someone has told you or when you are really shocked at the news that you have just heard, you can respond with 정말이에요. It can be inappropriate to use this expression with elder people, so it is better to use it only within close relationships.

## Conversation 1 Accepting another's proposal



track 017

유키코 내일 시간 있어요?

마크 네, 있어요.

유키코 그럼, 내일 같이 영화 봐요!

마크 좋아요. 그래요.

Yukiko Do you have some free time tomorrow?

Mark Yes, I do.

Yukiko Then let's go see a movie together tomorrow!

Mark OK, let's do that.



## Conversation 2 Confirming information



track 018

유키코 몇 시에 만나요?

마크 1시간 후에 봐요.

유키코 그럼, 3시 30분 맞아요?

마크 네, 맞아요.

Yukiko What time should we meet?

Mark Let's meet in an hour.

Yukiko So, at 3:30. Right?

Mark Yes, that's right.



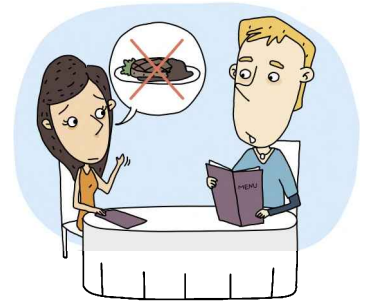
Conversation 3 Responding to others



track 019

유진 불고기 좋아해요?  
 마크 그럼요. 정말 좋아해요.  
 유진 저는 고기를 못 먹어요.  
 마크 아, 그래요?

Yujin Do you like bulgogi?  
 Mark Of course. I like it a lot.  
 Yujin I can't eat meat.  
 Mark Ah, really?



Try it Out

In this practice exercise, you will act as Mark, who is having a conversation with Minju. They are making an appointment to go hiking together.



track 020

내일 등산 같이 가요!

7시 반

아침 7시 반에 만나요!

네, 맞아요. 그때 봐요!

\_\_\_\_\_.



7시 30분 \_\_\_\_\_ ?



01 잘 지내셨어요?

02 오랜만이에요.

03 요즘 어떻게 지내세요?

04 덕분에 잘 지내요.

05 수고하셨습니다.

**01 How have you been? (lit. Have you been doing well?)**

When meeting acquaintances, you can use **잘 지내셨어요** to ask how they have been recently. It can be used with people you have not met for a long time and with people you meet regularly. To reply to this question, you can say **잘 지냈어요** (I have been doing fine). If you happen to meet someone that you know, you can say **안녕하세요** first and then ask **잘 지내셨어요**. By doing so, you will begin a conversation smoothly.

**02 It's been a long time.**

To express how glad you are to meet someone you have not met for a long time, you can say **오랜만이에요** or **오래간만이에요**. These expressions are often used in everyday life. To respond, you can say **네, 정말 오랜만이에요** (Yes, it has been a long time).

**03 How are you doing these days?**

When asking your acquaintance about how they have been recently, you can use **요즘 어떻게 지내세요**. It is often used in colloquial conversation but not with people you meet regularly. To reply, you can say **잘 지내요** (I am doing fine), or you can explain your current situation. Between people who have not met for some time, this expression allows one to begin a conversation by letting the other person know about recent life changes.

**04 Thanks to you, I'm doing fine.**

This expression means that you owe your good fortune or right circumstances to the other person's care or concern. It derives from an Oriental mindset in which one's well-being is connected with the people around you in your life. It is a common expression in Korea, so feel free to use it.

**05 Good job. / I appreciate your hard work. (lit. You have made a great effort.)**

**수고** means putting in the effort on a specific task. So when you say **수고하셨습니다**, it means that you appreciate the effort that someone has settled into a job. It is used to give thanks to someone who has provided a service to you. You can say **수고하셨습니다** when paying for the service. It can also apply to thanking co-workers when leaving your office for the day.

## Conversation 1 Greeting an acquaintance



track 022

마크 잘 지내셨어요?

유키코 네, 잘 지냈어요.

마크 씨도 잘 지내셨어요?

마크 네, 저도 잘 지냈어요.

Mark How have you been?

Yukiko I've been doing fine.  
How have you been, Mark?

Mark I've been doing fine too.



## Conversation 2 Greeting a person whom you haven't met for a long time



track 023

마크 오랜만이에요.

메이 네, 정말 오랜만이에요.

마크 요즘 어떻게 지내세요?

메이 덕분에 잘 지내요.

Mark It's been a long time.

Mei Yeah, it's been a really long time.

Mark How are you doing these days?

Mei Thanks to you, I'm doing fine.



### Conversation 3 Giving thanks for a service



track 024

마크 여기에 놓아 주세요.

Mark Please put it here.

기사 네, 알겠습니다.

Driver Yes, sir.

마크 수고하셨습니다.

Mark Thanks for your good work.

기사 감사합니다.

Driver Thank you.



### Try it Out

In this practice exercise, you will act as Mark, who is having a conversation with Yujin. Mark is asking Yujin how she has been doing recently.



track 025

안녕하세요?

오랜만이에요.  
\_\_\_\_\_?

덕분에 잘 지내요.  
마크 씨는요?  
\_\_\_\_\_.



01 맛있게 드세요.

02 잘 먹겠습니다.

03 잘 먹었습니다.

04 아니요, 괜찮아요.

05 초대해 주셔서 감사합니다.



**01 Enjoy your meal. (lit. Please eat it deliciously.)**

When presenting food to guests, you can say **맛있게 드세요**. You will often hear this expression when you are invited to dinner parties or when you receive your order in a restaurant. It sounds friendly and is a common expression used in everyday life. You can also use a similar phrase **많이 드세요** (Help yourself. lit. Please eat a lot). Feel free to use these expressions when you are offering people something to eat.

**02 Thank you for the food. / Bon appetit. (used before having a meal. lit. I will eat well.)**

To show gratitude to the person who is providing food, you can say **잘 먹겠습니다**. It means that you will be eating well. You can also use it to give thanks to someone who pays for your meal. It is customarily used when responding to the expression **맛있게 드세요**. You can use these expressions in both everyday life and formal situations alike.

**03 Thank you for the food. (used after a meal. lit. I ate well.)**

When you finish a meal, you can say **잘 먹었습니다**. It is customary to show gratitude to the person who provided the food. You can also use it when paying the owner of a restaurant. This expression can be used in both everyday life and formal situations alike.

**04 No, thank you. (lit. No, it's alright.)**

Koreans believe that offering more than enough food is a way of demonstrating **정** (warm affection and generous concern for people) and showing proper courtesy. So they will often provide more food even after you have finished a whole dish. To decline politely, you can say **아니요, 괜찮아요**. Still, they may insist that you have more food because it is customary to repeat the offer three times. If you are sure that you can not eat anymore, then you can say **아니요, 많이 먹었어요** (lit. No, I have eaten a lot).

**05 Thank you for inviting me.**

When leaving a party or event, you can say **초대해 주셔서 감사합니다** (Thanks for inviting me). The host can respond by saying **와 주셔서 감사합니다** (Thanks for coming). If you want to leave in the middle of a meeting or party, you can politely say **그만 가 볼게요** (I will have to go). If it is a formal meeting, then it is better to use **그만 가 보겠습니다** instead.

## Conversation 1 Before eating



track 027

한국인 맛있게 드세요.

마크 잘 먹겠습니다.

(after tasting) 정말 맛있네요.

한국인 그래요? 많이 드세요.

마크 네.

Korean Enjoy your meal (lit. Please eat it deliciously.)

Mark Thank you for the food.  
(after tasting)  
It's really delicious!

Korean Really? Help yourself.

Mark OK.



## Conversation 2 After finishing the meal



track 028

마크 잘 먹었습니다.

정말 맛있었어요.

한국인 조금 더 드릴까요?

마크 아니요, 괜찮아요.

한국인 알겠어요.

Mark Thank you for the food.  
It was really delicious.

Korean Would you like some more?

Mark No, thank you.

Korean OK.



### Conversation 3 Leaving a party



track 029

마크 초대해 주셔서 감사합니다.

한국인 와 주셔서 고마워요.

마크 안녕히 계세요.

한국인 안녕히 가세요. 또 놀러 오세요.

Mark Thanks for inviting me.

Korean Thanks for coming.

Mark Goodbye.

Korean Goodbye. Please come again.



### Try it Out

In this practice exercise, you will act as Mark, who is having a conversation with Yujin. Mark has been invited to Yujin's party.



track 030

맛있게 드세요.

\_\_\_\_\_.



(after finishing the meal)

음식은 어땠어요?

정말 맛있었어요.

\_\_\_\_\_.





01 축하합니다.

02 제가 한턱낼게요.

03 힘드시겠어요.

04 걱정하지 마세요.

05 힘내세요.

**01 Congratulations.**

When congratulating someone, you can use 축하합니다. You can name the occasion first such as 생일 (birthday), 승진 (promotion), 합격 (passing an entrance exam), and add 축하합니다 to the end. You can use it in formal and informal situations alike. To respond to this phrase, you can just say 감사합니다.

**02 I'll treat you. / It's on me. / I'll get it (the bill).**

When there is an occasion to celebrate in Korea, it is customary for the person who is celebrating to buy food in a restaurant or invite close friends to have dinner together. You can say 제가 한턱 낼게요 to make a promise to treat others. Even when there is no particular occasion to celebrate, when people dine together in Korea, it is customary for one person to pay for the group's food. This culture is because Korean people feel uneasy about paying separate bills, so they take turns covering the bill.

**03 It must be difficult for you.**

When consoling a person who is going through a tough time, you can say 힘드시겠어요. Unlike in English, you should not use 미안해요, because Korean use 미안해요 only when apologizing for something you have done. If you want to express your feeling of regret or pity for an unfortunate circumstance for which you are not to blame, you can say 유감입니다 (It is unfortunate. lit. It is regrettable) to express your disappointment.

**04 Don't worry.**

When trying to calm down people who are worried or stressed about something, you can say 걱정하지 마세요. This expression may sound a little rude to people from other cultures. However, Koreans use it often because they think it is essential to show concern for people who are in trouble. You can use 걱정 마세요 as the shortened form of 걱정하지 마세요.

**05 Cheer up. (lit. Please have more strength.)**

When encouraging people who are worried or disappointed, you can say 힘내세요. The English loanword 파이팅! (Fighting!) is also used, especially for supporting athletes and crowds right before a game. When accompanied by a clenched fist gesture, it will feel like giving strength to them.

## Conversation 1 Congratulating someone



track 032

마크 승진 축하합니다.

동호 감사합니다.

마크 정말 잘됐어요.

동호 제가 한턱낼게요.

Mark Congratulations on your promotion.

Dongho Thank you!

Mark I'm really glad for you.  
(lit. It really turned out well.)

Dongho I'll treat you (to a meal/drink etc. to celebrate).



## Conversation 2 Consoling a person who is having trouble



track 033

마크 힘드시겠어요.

한국인 네.

마크 제가 도울 일이 있으면 언제든지  
말해 주세요.

한국인 고맙습니다.

Mark It must be difficult for you.

Korean Yes.

Mark Just let me know if there's  
anything I can do.

Korean Thank you.



### Conversation 3 Cheering up a worried person



track 034

- 메이 결과가 걱정돼요.
- 마크 걱정하지 마세요. 잘될 거예요.
- 메이 네, 고마워요.
- 마크 힘내세요. 파이팅!

- Mei I'm worried about my results.
- Mark Don't worry. Everything is going to be fine.
- Mei OK, thank you.
- Mark Cheer up. Fighting!



### Try it Out

In this practice exercise, you will act as Mark, who is having a conversation with Minju. Mark is congratulating Minju on her birthday and making an appointment to have dinner together.



track 035





01 여보세요?

02 지금 통화 괜찮아요?

03 실례지만, 누구세요?

04 잠깐만요.

05 전화 잘못 거셨어요.



### 01 Hello?

여보세요 is the customary greeting used in telephone conversations regardless of age and status. You can use this expression in a casual and formal settings alike. When politely saying goodbye at the end of a call, you can say 안녕히 계세요. You can also say 끊을게요 in an informal setting.

### 02 Are you available now? (lit. Is it all right to call now?)

When asking whether the person is available to speak at the moment, you can ask 지금 통화 괜찮아요. This expression is commonly used with people in a business relationship or people with whom you have a little or no acquaintance and shows general courtesy. When responding, you can say 네, 괜찮아요 (Yes, it is all right). Or if you are busy at that moment, you can say 제가 다시 전화할게요 (I will call you back).

### 03 Excuse me, who is this?

This expression is used to ask for the identity of the caller politely. When you cannot be sure of who is calling or visiting you, you can ask 실례지만, 누구세요. You can also use it with people who wish to speak to someone else during a phone call or are looking for someone else at your place. It is a polite expression, so when you use it, you should say it in a slightly low tone.

### 04 Hold on a minute. / Just a minute.

When asking someone to wait a short time in colloquial conversation, you can use 잠깐만요. It is not a formal expression but is very convenient when you need to take a moment in the middle of a conversation without hurting another person's feelings. You can also use 잠시만요 in the same meaning. However, if you want to use it in a formal situation, you should use 잠깐만(잠시만) 기다려 주세요 instead.

### 05 You've called the wrong number.

When politely explaining that someone has called the wrong number, you can say 전화 잘못 거셨어요. This expression often happens in everyday life, so it will be useful to remember this expression. To make it sound formal, you can say 전화 잘못 거셨습니다 instead.

## Conversation 1 Making a call



track 037

유진 여보세요.

Yujin Hello.

마크 여보세요. 저 마크예요.

Mark Hello. This is Mark.

유진 마크 씨, 안녕하세요.

Yujin Hello, Mark.

마크 지금 통화 괜찮아요?

Mark Are you available to talk now?

유진 괜찮아요. 말씀하세요.

Yujin Sure. Go ahead.



## Conversation 2 Looking for a person on the phone



track 038

마크 여보세요. 폴 씨 계세요?

Mark Hello. Is Paul there?

한국인 지금 안 계신데요.

Korean He's not in right now.  
Excuse me, who's this?

실례지만, 누구세요?

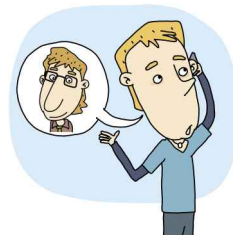
Mark It's Mark. Could you please  
give him a message?

마크 저는 마크라고 합니다.

Korean Hold on a minute.

메모 좀 전해 주세요.

한국인 잠깐만요.



### Conversation 3 Responding to a wrong number



track 039

한국인 여보세요. 김수민 씨 좀 바꿔 주세요.

Korean Hello. Can I talk to Kim Sumin?

마크 전화 잘못 거셨어요.

Mark You've called the wrong number.

한국인 네? 거기 754-8812 아니에요?

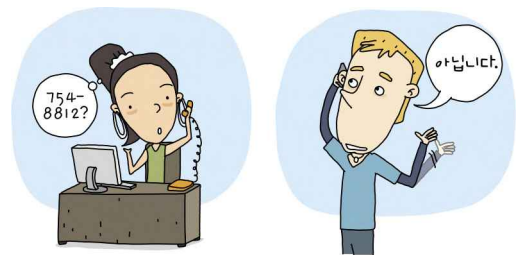
Korean What? Isn't this 754-8812?

마크 아닙니다.

Mark No.

한국인 죄송합니다.

Korean I'm sorry.



### Try it Out

In this practice exercise, you will act as Mark, who is having a conversation with Yujin. Mark is speaking with Yujin by phone.



track 040



저, 마크예요.  
지금 \_\_\_\_\_?



미안해요.  
제가 다시 전화할게요.



01 네?

02 뭐라고 하셨어요?

03 못 들었어요.

04 다시 한번 말해 주세요.

05 잘 안 들려요.

**01 Excuse me? / I'm sorry?**

When you can not be sure of what another person has said, you can use 네 with a question mark to ask them to repeat the information. It may sound impolite if you speak it with a strong rising tone. So it is better to say it with a slight rising tone.

**02 Pardon me? (lit. What did you say?)**

When asking others to repeat something, you can use 뭐라고 하셨어요. Its grammatical form is honorific, but if used for people who are older than you or with higher status, it may sound impolite. So it is better to say it as softly as possible.

**03 I couldn't hear you.**

When you cannot follow what another person is saying, you can say 못 들었어요. You can express that you could not understand what they said or comprehend their speech for some reason. This expression can be useful when you feel that it is hard to follow Koreans' rapid speech.

**04 Please, say it one more time.**

When politely asking others to repeat what was said, you can use 다시 한번 말해 주세요. It is a polite and soft expression so you can use it with anybody. When the person was speaking too fast for you to understand, you can also say 천천히 말해 주세요 (Please, speak slowly).

**05 I can't hear you well.**

When it is hard to hear others because of other noises or because they are using a soft voice, you can use 잘 안 들려요. This expression is often used in telephone conversations. If you want to ask another person to speak more loudly, you can say 크게 말해 주세요 (Please, speak louder).

## Conversation 1

### When you couldn't hear what others are saying



track 042

유진 진수 씨 전화번호 좀 가르쳐 주세요.

Yujin Please let me know Jinsu's phone number.

마크 네?

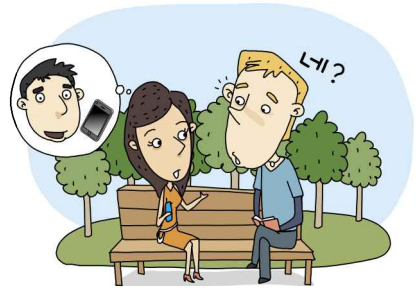
Mark I'm sorry?

유진 진수 씨 전화번호요.

Yujin Jinsu's phone number.

마크 네, 잠깐만요.

Mark All right, hold on a minute.



## Conversation 2

### When asking others to repeat what was said



track 043

마크 조금 전에 뭐라고 하셨어요?

Mark What did you just say?

메이 네?

Mei Excuse me?

마크 잘 못 들었어요.  
다시 한번 말해 주세요.

Mark I didn't follow that. Please say it one more time.

메이 네, 알겠어요.

Mei OK, I understand.



### Conversation 3

### When you can't hear well during a telephone call



track 044

마크 잘 안 들려요.  
좀 크게 말해 주세요.

Mark I can't hear you well. Please speak loudly.

수잔 (in a louder voice) 이제 잘 들려요?

Susan (in a louder voice) Can you hear me well now?

마크 아니요.

Mark No.

수잔 제가 다시 전화할게요.

Susan I'll call you back.



### Try it Out

In this practice exercise, you will act as Mark, who is having a conversation with a Korean. Mark is asking the person to repeat what was said.



track 045

저, 다시 한번 \_\_\_\_\_.

잘 \_\_\_\_\_.



네?

네, 내일 3시에 오세요.



01 주말 잘 보내세요.

02 안녕히 가세요.

03 내일 봐요.

04 몸조리 잘하세요.

05 연락할게요.



### 01 Have a nice weekend.

Before the weekend, you can use 주말 잘 보내세요 to wish people like your friends or co-workers a good weekend. You can also use this expression on other occasions. For example, if a person is going on vacation, you can replace 주말 (weekend) with 휴가 (vacation, holiday) to say 휴가 잘 보내세요. When responding, you can repeat the expression to return the sentiment to the original speaker.

### 02 Goodbye.

안녕히 가세요 is the most common expression when saying goodbye. There are two slightly different goodbyes in Korean. One is 안녕히 가세요 (lit. Go safely when leaving), and the other is 안녕히 계세요 (lit. Stay safely). To choose the right one, you need to put yourself in the other person's shoes. If the other person is leaving and going to another place, you use 안녕히 가세요. If the other person is staying in the same place, you use 안녕히 계세요. In a close relationship, you can say 잘 가요 instead of 안녕히 가세요 and 잘 있어요 instead of 안녕히 계세요.

### 03 See you tomorrow.

내일 봐요 sounds less formal than 안녕히 가세요, so it can be used between people of a similar age group or between co-workers who share the same status. If you want to use it with people who are older than you or with a higher status in a formal situation, it is better to use the more polite expression 내일 뵙겠습니다.

### 04 Take care of yourself.

When saying goodbye to a person who is experiencing a health problem, you can use 몸조리 잘하세요 with friends and seniors alike. Even though English speakers use "take care of yourself" when saying goodbye, Koreans use this expression only for sick people in order to show their concern and care. When responding, you can say 감사합니다. If you want to tell someone who is suffering to watch out for a specific problem such as the flu, you can say 감기 조심하세요 (Please make sure you don't get the flu. lit. Please be careful of the flu).

### 05 I'll contact you.

When promising that you will contact someone, you can say 연락할게요. This expression can only be used between people in a close relationship. So if you have to say it formally to someone who is older than you or with higher status, it is better to use 연락드리겠습니다 instead.

## Conversation 1

### Saying goodbye at the end of the week



track 047

마크 주말 잘 보내세요.

수잔 마크 씨도요.

마크 안녕히 계세요.

수잔 안녕히 가세요.

Mark Have a nice weekend.

Susan You too.

Mark Goodbye. (lit. Stay safely.)

Susan Goodbye. (lit. Go safely when leaving.)



## Conversation 2

### Saying goodbye when leaving early



track 048

마크 그만 가 볼게요.

유진 잘 가요.

마크 내일 봐요.

유진 내일 봐요.

Mark I have to go now.

Yujin Goodbye.

Mark See you tomorrow.

Yujin See you tomorrow.



### Conversation 3 Saying goodbye to a sick person



track 049

마크 몸조리 잘하세요.

Mark Take care of yourself.

메이 네, 고마워요.

Mei I'll. Thank you.

마크 나중에 연락할게요.

Mark I'll contact you later.

메이 그래요.

Mei Please do.



### Try it Out

In this practice exercise, you will act as Mark, who is having a conversation with Minju. Minju is saying goodbye and wishing Mark a nice vacation. In response, Mark is saying goodbye and wishing Minju a nice vacation.



track 050

마크 씨, 휴가 잘 보내세요.

민주 씨도 \_\_\_\_\_.

그럼, 먼저 갈게요.  
안녕히 계세요.



# Part **2**

## **24 Scenes in Everyday Life**

**Chapter 1** Beginning your journey in Korea

**Chapter 2** Preparing the necessary items for living in Korea

**Chapter 3** Making appointments with friends in Korea

**Chapter 4** Adapting to life in Korea

**Chapter 5** Working out problems

**Chapter 6** Traveling in Korea



# Chapter 1

Beginning your journey in Korea

**Scene 01** At the airport bus terminal

**Scene 02** At a subway station

**Scene 03** Inside a subway train

**Scene 04** On the street



야마다 유키코 (일본)  
Yukiko Yamada (Japan)

# Chapter 1

Beginning your journey in Korea



# Scene 01

At the airport bus terminal

Asking for bus information

## 좀 천천히 말해 주세요.

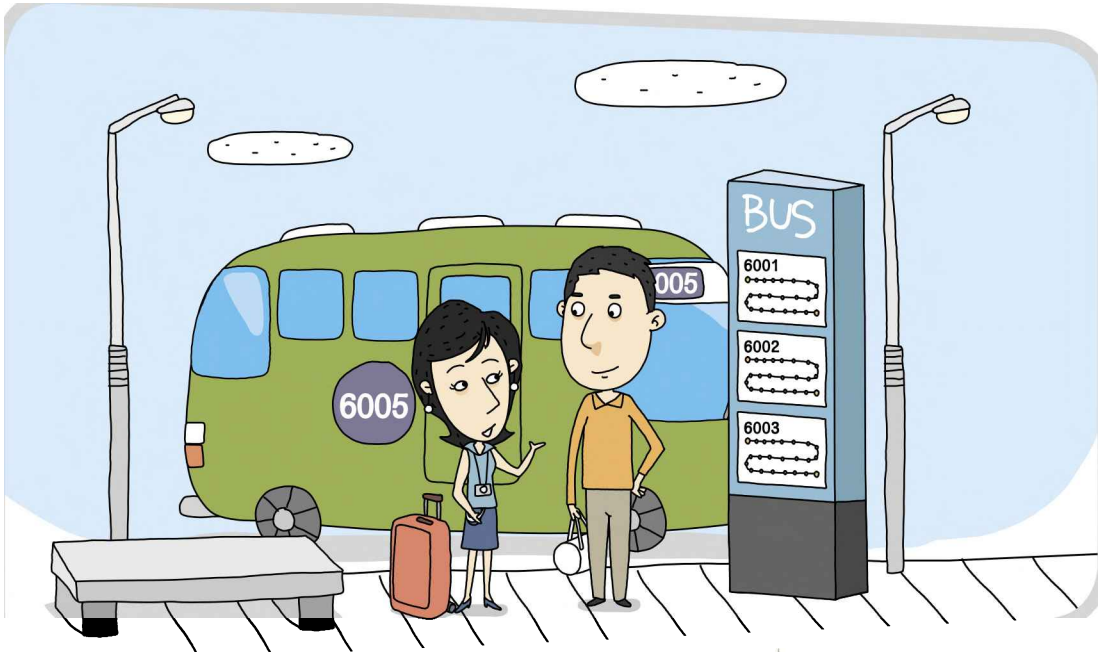
Could you please speak slowly?



# Conversation



track 051



유키코 저……, 몇 번 버스가 명동에 가요?

한국인 잠깐만요. 6001번 버스가 명동에 가요.

유키코 네? 좀 천천히 말해 주세요.

한국인 6001번 버스요.

유키코 버스가 얼마나 자주 있어요?

한국인 20분마다 있어요.

유키코 감사합니다.

Yukiko Excuse me. Which bus goes to Myeongdong? (lit. What bus number goes to Myeongdong?)

Korean Hold on. The 6001 bus goes to Myeongdong.

Yukiko Excuse me? Could you please speak slowly?

Korean The 6001 bus.

Yukiko How often does it come by?

Korean (There's a bus) every 20 minutes.

Yukiko Thank you.

▶ **New Vocabulary**

- 몇 번 what number, which number
- 버스 bus
- 명동 Myeongdong (a place in Seoul)
- 가다 to go
- 좀 please, a little
- 천천히 slowly
- 말하다 to speak, say, tell
- 있다 to be
- 분 minute
- 마다 every

▶ **New Expressions**

- 저..... Excuse me.
- 잠깐만요. Hold on.
- 네? Excuse me?
- 몇 번 버스가 ...에 가요?  
Which bus goes to ...?  
(lit. What bus number goes to...?)
- 얼마나 자주 ...이/가 있어요?  
How often (does .... come/is there)...?

▶ **Close-Up**

**1 몇 번**

(Asking for numbers)

When asking about specific numbers, you can use the question word 몇 번 (which/what number). For example, 몇 번 can be used to ask about phone numbers, addresses, postal codes, seat numbers in a theater, any kind of number-related question. When asked, you can reply using Sino-Korean numbers (일, 이, 삼, ...). If you want someone to repeat the number for confirmation, you can say 몇 번이요? (What number is it?)

- (Ex.) A 전화번호가 몇 번이예요?  
What's your phone number?
- B 3672-9415예요.  
It's 3672-9415.

**2 얼마나 자주**

(Asking for frequency)

When asking about the frequency of a certain action or event, you can use the question word 얼마나 자주 (how often). When asked, there are two ways to reply. One is to give the specific time at which the event reoccurs, for example, 일요일마다 (every Sunday) by adding 마다 to the end of the specific time. The other is to state the specific interval of reoccurrence (for example 일주일에 한 번).

- (Ex.) A 얼마나 자주 모임에 가요?  
How often do you go to the meeting?
- B 일요일마다 가요.  
I go to the meeting every Sunday.  
(= 일주일에 한 번 가요.  
= I go to the meeting once a week.)

• **Reading the Sino-Korean Numbers**

Let's review the Sino-Korean numbers.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
일	이	삼	사	오	육	칠	팔	구	십
20	30	40	50	.....	100	.....	150		
이십	삼십	사십	오십	.....	백	.....	백오십		

**! Be careful**  
Let's check the following pronunciation.

11 십일 [시빌]	66 [육쌌늑]
16 십육 [심늑]	101 [배길]
19 십구 [육쌌늑]	106 [뱅늑]

**Flashback**



## -아/어 주세요 Could you please...?

-아/어 주세요 is used with a verb to ask another person to do a specific action for yourself. The verb 하다 is used as 해 주세요. When the stem ends with a vowel ㅏ or ㅑ, -아 주세요 is added to the stem. -어 주세요 is added to the stem for the rest of the vowels. Simply put, first, change the verb expressing the other person's action to the present conjugation -아/어요, then drop 요 and add 주세요 at the end. For example, when asking another person to speak slowly, first change the verb 말하다 to the present conjugation 말해요, then drop 요, and then add 주세요 to complete the sentence.

가르치다	길을 가르쳐 <b>주세요.</b>	Could you please show me which way to go? (lit. Teach me the way.)
말하다	천천히 말해 <b>주세요.</b>	Could you please speak slowly? (lit. Speak slowly.)
오다	여기로 와 <b>주세요.</b>	Could you please come here? (lit. Come here.)
★ 돕다	도와 <b>주세요.</b>	Could you please help me? (lit. Help me.)

When asking another person for an object, use 주세요 after the object. For example, when asking for water, say 물 주세요.

커피 <b>주세요.</b>	Could I please have a coffee? (lit. Give me a coffee.)
영수증 <b>주세요.</b>	Could I please have the receipt? (lit. Give me the receipt.)

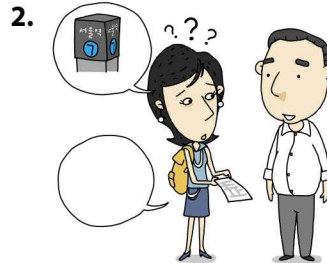
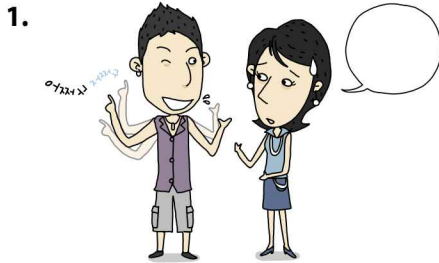
좀 means “please” and it is used in order to speak more politely in colloquial conversation. There are two ways it can be used. One is to replace an object marker 을/를. The other is before a verb or an adverb, to emphasize it.

길 <b>좀</b> 가르쳐 주세요.	Can you please show me the way? (lit. Please, teach me the direction.)
<b>좀</b> 천천히 말해 주세요.	Can you please speak slowly? (lit. Please, speak slowly.)

# Quiz Yourself !

**1~4** Look at the picture and choose the correct answer from the following options.

- ㉠ 전화번호를 알려 주세요.
- ㉡ 사진을 찍어 주세요.
- ㉢ 천천히 말해 주세요.
- ㉣ 도와주세요.



**5~7** Complete the conversation by using -아/어 주세요.

- Ex.** A 약속 시간을 잘 모르겠어요. 저한테 알려 주세요. (알리다)  
 B 네, 알겠어요.
5. A 길이 많이 막혀요. 조금만 \_\_\_\_\_. (기다리다)  
 B 알겠어요.
6. A 컴퓨터가 고장 났어요. 내일 \_\_\_\_\_. (고치다)  
 B 알겠어요. 내일 7시에 고쳐 드릴게요.
7. A 이 옷이 좀 작아요. 다른 사이즈 옷으로 \_\_\_\_\_. (바꾸다)  
 B 네, 바꿔 드릴게요.

Answer p.277

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 052

## (Adverb) 말해 주세요

Understanding the way of speaking

안 들려요. 크게 말해 주세요.

I cannot hear (you). Could you please speak loudly?

너무 빨라요. 천천히 말해 주세요.

(You speak) too fast. Could you please speak slowly?

못 들었어요. 다시 한번 말해 주세요.

I couldn't hear (it). Could you please say it again?

한국어를 몰라요. 영어로 말해 주세요.

I don't know Korean. Could you please speak in English?

## (Question) 알려 주세요

Asking for more information

어떻게 가야 해요? 알려 주세요.

How do I get there? Please let me know.

버스비가 얼마예요? 알려 주세요.

How much is the bus fare? Please let me know.

어디에서 표를 사요? 알려 주세요.

Where do I buy the ticket? Please let me know.

시간이 얼마나 걸려요? 알려 주세요.

How long does it take? Please let me know.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to the bus

교통 카드 transportation card

충전 recharge

매표소 ticket booth

버스 정류장 bus stop

버스 기사 bus driver

짐 luggage



버스 정류장

짐

# Conversation Rehearsal



track 053

(time) **에** / (time interval) **마다** 있어요

Explaining the bus schedule

몇 시에 버스가 있어요?

What time does the bus come by?

→ 12시에 **있어요**.

→ (There's a bus) at 12:00.

→ 10분 후에 **있어요**.

→ (There's a bus that arrives) after 10 minutes.

→ 20분마다 **있어요**.

→ (There's a bus) every 20 minutes.

→ 30분마다 **있어요**.

→ (There's a bus) every 30 minutes.

(place) **이/가** 어디예요

Asking for a location

화장실이 어디예요?

Where is the bathroom?

매표소가 어디예요?

Where is the ticket sales counter?

버스 정류장이 어디예요?

Where is the bus station?

안내 데스크가 어디예요?

Where is the help desk?

## Pronunciation Tip

몇 번 [몇 뽀]

Since the final consonants ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅋ are all pronounced as [ㄷ], 몇 is pronounced as [뽀]. The initial sound of the next syllable ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ which is followed by the final consonant [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ], is pronounced as [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ]. Therefore, the first sound ㅂ of 번 after [뽀] is pronounced as [뽀].

예 몇 개 [몇 개] 몇 잔 [몇 잔]



track 054



Coffee Break

### How to read bus numbers

Sino-Korean numbers are usually used when reading numbers. So, how should the bus number 602-1 be read? Similar to English, '1' is read as 다시, so 602-1 is read as 육백이 다시 일. If you don't hear the number, ask 네? Using your fingers is also a good idea.

### *From the airport to your destination*

There are three ways to get to your destination by public transportation from Incheon International Airport: airport bus, airport train, or taxi.

First of all, airport buses are cheaper and more comfortable to ride than taxis. Airport buses run from Incheon International Airport via Gimpo Airport to major attractions in Seoul. It takes about 30 minutes from Incheon International Airport to Gimpo Airport and 30 minutes to 1 hour from Gimpo Airport to each area in Seoul. There is a bus ticket office and a bus stop as soon as you leave the airport. You can check the bus routes by searching for a destination on the touch screen. If you plan to use the airport bus again in the future, it is a good idea to check with the bus driver the location of the bus stop heading to Incheon Airport before you get off the bus. You can also go directly to places like Busan, Gwangju, or Daejeon by bus from Incheon Airport.



Next, the airport train is the cheapest and fastest way to get to your destination without experiencing any traffic delays. There are direct trains and general trains. The direct train from Incheon International Airport to Seoul Station takes about 30 minutes without stops. General trains take about 60 minutes from Incheon International Airport to Seoul Station. In the case of general trains, transfers can be made at subway stations in Seoul, thereby enabling access to all parts of the metropolitan area. The airport train also has the advantages of clean facilities, low fares, and easy accessibility to stations.

Lastly, taxis are readily available upon leaving the airport, but they are relatively expensive compared to airport buses or airport trains. Still, the advantage of taking a taxi is that you can arrive right in front of your desired destination.

If you are willing to disclose your destination, help can be sought from the information desks found throughout the airport. And if you need translation service, dial 1330 (no area code necessary) to contact translation agents from the Korea Tourism Organization. This free translation service is available 24 hours a day and provides information, in addition to transportation, about restaurants and accommodations.



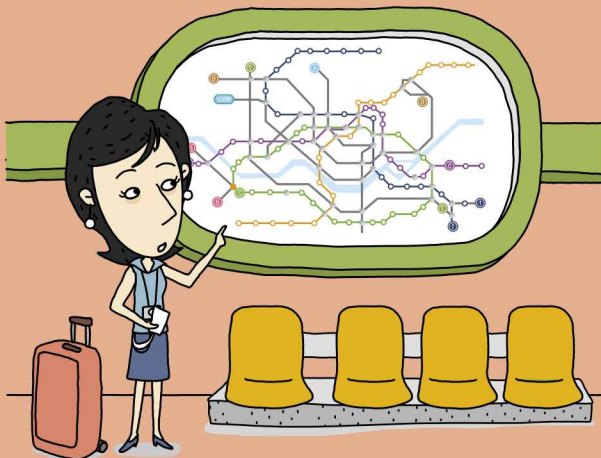
# Scene 02

At a subway station

Asking about subway destinations

## 반대쪽에서 타세요.

Take the train on the opposite side.



Yukiko

A Korean bystander  
at the subway station

# Conversation



track 055



유키코 저……, 이 지하철이 강남역에 가요?

한국인 아니요, 반대쪽에서 타세요.

유키코 반대쪽요?

한국인 네, 저기에서 타세요.

유키코 반대쪽에 어떻게 가요?

한국인 이 계단으로 가세요.

유키코 알겠어요. 감사합니다.

Yukiko Excuse me, does this train go to Gangnam station?

Korean No. Take the train on the opposite side.

Yukiko The opposite side?

Korean Yes, (you should) get on (the train) over there.

Yukiko How do I get to the other side?

Korean (You should) Take these stairs. (lit. go to these stairs.)

Yukiko I will. (lit. I understand.) Thank you.

▶ **New Vocabulary**

- 이 this
- 지하철 subway
- 강남역 Gangnam station
- 에 a marker indicating a destination or the place of a state
- 반대쪽 the opposite side
- 에서 a location marker indicating a place in which an action takes place
- (으)로 by means of (a marker indicating a method, means, and tool of action)
- 타다 to get on, get in, ride, take (a vehicle)
- 저기 over there
- 어떻게 how
- 계단 stairs

▶ **New Expressions**

- 아니요. No.
- 반대쪽에서 타세요.  
Take... on the opposite side.
- 반대쪽에 어떻게 가요?  
How do I get to the other side?
- 이 계단으로 가세요.  
(You should) Take these stairs.  
(lit. Go to these stairs.)
- 알겠어요. I will.

▶ **Close-Up**

1 **이/그/저**  
(this / that / that)

Like “this and that” in English 이/그/저 are used to indicate specific objects. They should be placed before the noun they refer to. 이 is used when the indicated object is close to the speaker. 그 is used when the indicated object is close to the listener but distant from the speaker. And 그 is also used to indicate an object which is discussed during a conversation but cannot be seen at the moment, 그 is used. 저 is used when the indicated object is distant from the speaker and the listener.

- (Ex.) 이 지하철이 명동에 가요?  
Does **this** train go to Myeongdong?
- (Ex.) 어제 그 영화가 재미있었어요?  
Was **that** movie yesterday good?
- (Ex.) 저 사람 알아요? Do you know **that** person?

2 **에 and 에서**  
(Indicating a place)

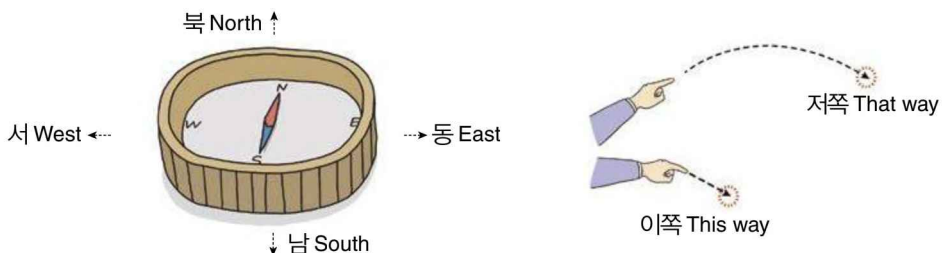
In Korean, the markers 에 and 에서 indicate a place. The marker 에서 is used to indicate the place where action verbs such as 운동하다 or 먹다 occur, and the marker 에 is used with verbs such as 있다 and 없다 to indicate the place of a state.

- (Ex.) 보통 저는 집에서 밥을 먹어요.  
I usually eat **at** home.
- (Ex.) 지금 집에 있어요. I'm **at** home now.

**Flashback**

• **Expressing directions**

When indicating a direction in Korean, 쪽 is added. When indicating a direction, use 동쪽 (east), 서쪽 (west), 남쪽 (south), and 북쪽 (north) or use 이쪽 (this way) or 저쪽 (that way) while pointing your hand in the direction.





## The imperative **-(으)세요** and **-지 마세요**

**-(으)세요** is used when asking, recommending, giving advice, or ordering someone to do something with courtesy in everyday life. **-(으)세요** is attached to the stem of a verb. **-세요** is used when the verb stem ends in a vowel, and **-으세요** is used when it ends in a consonant.

<b>들어오다</b>	<b>들어오세요.</b>	Come in.
<b>앉다</b>	<b>여기 앉으세요.</b>	Sit here.
<b>★ 듣다</b>	<b>아침 뉴스를 들으세요.</b>	Listen to the morning news.

Conversely, add **-지 마세요** to the stem of the verb when asking, recommending, advising, or commanding someone not to do something.

<b>피우다</b>	<b>담배를 피우지 마세요.</b>	Don't smoke (cigarettes).
<b>먹다</b>	<b>이 음식을 먹지 마세요.</b>	Don't eat this food.

Most verbs can be made into commands by adding **-(으)세요** to the end of the verb stem. However, in a few cases (**먹다**, **있다**, **자다**, and **말하다**) stems should be changed into special honorific verb forms (**드시다**, **계시다**, **주무시다**, and **말씀하시다**) respectively when forming instructions or commands.

<b>먹다, 마시다</b>	<b>드시다</b>	Ⓧ <b>많이 드세요.</b>	Help yourself. (lit. Eat a lot.)
<b>있다</b>	<b>계시다</b>	Ⓧ <b>안녕히 계세요.</b>	Goodbye.
<b>자다</b>	<b>주무시다</b>	Ⓧ <b>안녕히 주무세요.</b>	Good night. (lit. Sleep well.)
<b>말하다</b>	<b>말씀하시다</b>	Ⓧ <b>좀 크게 말씀하세요.</b>	Please speak a bit louder.

### ! Be careful!

There is a difference between **-(으)세요** and the **-아/어 주세요** learned in Scene 1. **-아/어 주세요** is used when you either ask someone to do something for you or ask yourself to do something for yourself. On the other hand, **-(으)세요** is used when instructing someone to do something that is not used for the speaker. For example, when a female asks a male to buy a bag for her, she uses **-아/어 주세요**. However, when a female advises a male to buy a bag for him, she uses **-(으)세요**.

# Quiz Yourself !

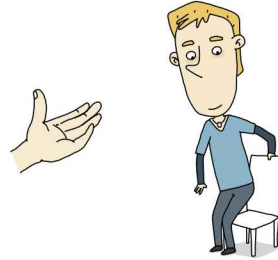
**1~3** Look at the picture and choose the correct answer to complete the sentence.

Ex.



14페이지를  ① 펴세요 /  ② 펴지 마세요.

1.



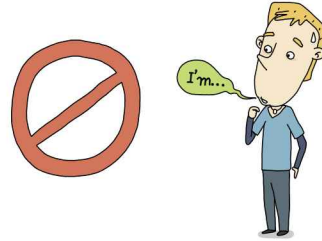
의자에  ① 앉으세요 /  ② 앉지 마세요.

2.



책을  ① 보세요 /  ② 보지 마세요.

3.



영어로  ① 말하세요 /  ② 말하지 마세요.

**4~6** Choose the correct answer and complete the conversation by using -(으)세요 or -지 마세요.

먹다

얘기하다

피우다

건너다

Ex. A 한국어를 어떻게 공부해요?  
B 한국 사람하고 많이 얘기하세요.

4. A 은행에 어떻게 가요?  
B 저기 가게 앞에서 길을 \_\_\_\_\_.

5. A 요즘 힘이 없어요.  
B 그러면 이 약을 \_\_\_\_\_.

6. A 목이 너무 아파요.  
B 담배가 안 좋아요. 담배를 \_\_\_\_\_.

Answer p.277

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 056

## (Adverb indicating direction) 가세요

Showing the way

쪽 가세요.

Go in that direction.

왼쪽으로 가세요.

Go left.

오른쪽으로 가세요.

Go right.

길을 따라 가세요.

Go along the road.

## (Action) -지 마세요

Reading signs

뛰지 마세요.

Don't run.

사진을 찍지 마세요.

Don't take any pictures.

음식을 먹지 마세요.

Don't eat any food.

담배를 피우지 마세요.

Don't smoke.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to the subway

- 도착 arrival
- 출발 departure
- 출구 exit
- 입구 entrance
- 비상구 emergency exit
- 개찰구 ticket gate



# Conversation Rehearsal



track 057

## 어디에서/어느 역에서 ...?

Asking for information about a place

어디에서 사요?

→ 입구에서 사세요.

Where do you buy it?

→ You can buy it at the entrance.

어디에서 타요?

→ 반대쪽에서 타세요.

Where do you get on?

→ Take the train on the opposite side.

어느 역에서 내려요?

→ 강남역에서 내리세요.

Which station do I get off at?

→ You can get off at Gangnam station.

어느 역에서 갈아타요?

→ 시청역에서 갈아타세요.

Which station do I make a transfer at?

→ Transfer at the City Hall station.

## (means, ways) (으)로 가세요

Reporting how to go

어떻게 가야 해요?

→ 이쪽으로 가세요.

How do I get there?

→ Please, go **this way**.

→ 계단으로 가세요.

→ Please, go **via the stairs**.

→ 엘리베이터로 가세요.

→ Please, go **via the elevator**.

→ 에스컬레이터로 가세요.

→ Please, go **via the escalator**.

## Pronunciation Tip

감사합니다 [감사합니다]

When the final consonant is pronounced as [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ], if the first sound of the last syllable starts with ㄴ, ㅁ, the consonant pronunciation [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ] is pronounced as [ㅇ, ㄴ, ㅁ]. In the example above, the consonant [ㅂ] of 합 is pronounced [ㅁ] because of the ㄴ of the last syllable 니.

예 죄송합니다 [죄송합니다] 미안합니다 [미안합니다]



track 058



## Coffee Break

### Directions of subway lines

Line 2 runs in a loop but the other subway lines run in straight routes, so it is important to know the direction in which the subway is heading. If the sign of the subway reads OO 방면, it means that the subway is going in OO direction. For example, if you want to go in the direction of Gimpo Airport on subway line 5, you should look for signs that say 김포 공항 방면 or ask people 이거 김포 공항 방면 지하철 맞아요? (Is this subway heading to Gimpo Airport?)

## Seoul's convenient transportation card



Seoul's public transportation system is well laid-out and inexpensive to use. Public transportation can be used with cash and transportation cards. However, it is common to use transportation cards because not only is the transportation card convenient, but cash cannot receive discounts when transferring to other modes of public transportation.

Transportation cards can be purchased or refilled at convenience stores. Koreans usually use a credit card with a transportation card function or use a transportation card mobile app.

If you have a transportation card, you can get a discount when transferring to subways and buses in Seoul and Gyeonggi-do. For 1,200 to 2,000 won, you can conveniently travel anywhere from Seoul to the metropolitan area. You can transfer for free to other modes of transportation within 30 minutes. However, if the distance from the first stop to the last stop is 10 km or longer, and the travel time is longer than 1 hour, an additional fee will be charged.

A transportation card is also easy to use. On the subway or bus, you can touch the card to the terminal twice when getting on or off the bus. On the subway, everyone must use a transportation card, but on the bus, several people can pay the bus fare with a single transportation card. To pay for multiple people with one transportation card, when boarding the bus, first, tell the bus driver the number of people, and tap your card on the card reader after the driver instructs accordingly. However, in this case, you must always follow the same exact procedure whenever transferring.

You can also pay for taxi fares with a transportation card. However, be aware that you cannot receive a discount when transferring from either a bus or subway to a taxi.



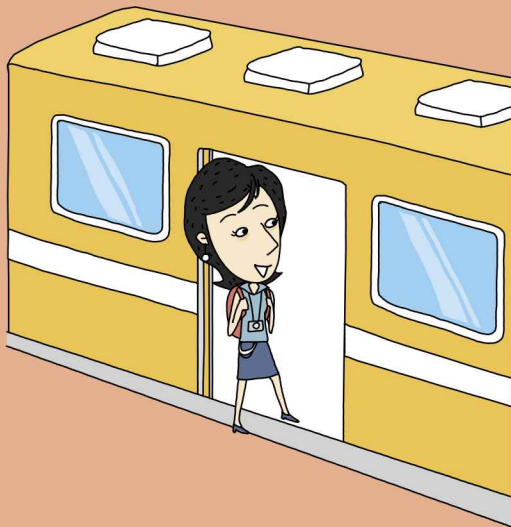
# Scene 03

Inside a subway train

Greeting someone for the first time

## 외국인이세요?

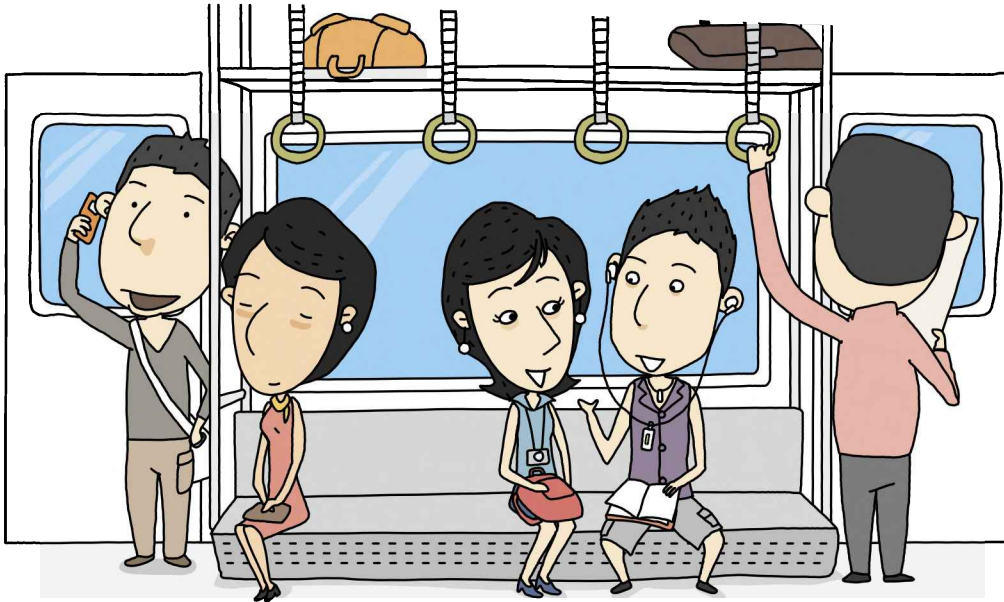
Are you a foreigner?



# Conversation



track 059



유키코 저……, 강남역 멀었어요?

한국인 아직 멀었어요.

유키코 네.

한국인 외국인이에요?

유키코 네, 일본에서 왔어요.

한국인 그런데 한국말을 잘하세요.

유키코 아니에요, 잘 못해요.

Yukiko Excuse me, are we far from Gangnam station?

Korean It is still a ways away.

Yukiko I see.

Korean Are you a foreigner?

Yukiko Yes, I came from Japan.

Korean (But) you speak Korean well.

Yukiko No, I'm not very good at it.

**New Vocabulary**

- 멀다 to be far, distant, remote
- 아직 still, so far, yet
- 외국인 foreigner
- 일본 Japan
- 그런데 but, however
- 한국말 Korean (language)
- 잘하다 to be good at
- 아니다 not
- 잘 well
- 못하다 to not be good at

**New Expressions**

- ... 멀었어요?  
Are we far from...?
- 아직 멀었어요.  
It is still a ways away.
- 네. Yes.
- 한국말을 잘하세요.  
You speak Korean well.
- 아니예요, 잘 못해요.  
No, I'm not good at it.

**Close-Up**

**1 잘해요 and 못해요**  
(Doing well or can't do)

When you are good at something that requires a special technique, ability, or skill, such as sports or cooking, you use the verb 잘하다. When you are not good at something that requires a special technique, ability, or skill, you use the verb 못하다. 잘하다 and 못하다 are used together with the marker 을/를, but the marker 을/를 is often dropped in colloquial speech.

(Ex) 진수 씨는 수영을 잘해요. 그런데 요리를 못해요.  
Jinsu is good at swimming. But he can't cook.

**2 아니요 and 아니예요**  
(Answering negatively)

아니요 and 아니예요 are both used for negative answers, but they have different uses. 아니요 is the negative answer of 네. On the other hand, 아니예요 has the meaning of 그것이 아니다. In this conversation, 아니예요, 잘 못해요 means “No, I'm not very good at it”. Thus, 아니예요 is used and not 아니요.

(Ex) A 폴 씨, 학생이에요?  
Paul, are you a student?  
B 아니요, 학생이 아니예요.  
No, I am not a student.

**Flashback**

**• Nationality and language**

When a country name is followed by 사람 or 인, it means a person of that nationality. Languages of countries are formed by adding 말 or 어 to country names.

Country		Korea	Japan	China	France	America	Foreign
Nationality	Colloquial Form	한국 사람 Korean person	일본 사람 Japanese person	중국 사람 Chinese person	프랑스 사람 French person	미국 사람 American person	외국 사람 Foreign person
	Literary Form	한국인 Korean	일본인 Japanese	중국인 Chinese	프랑스인 French	미국인 American	외국인 Foreigner
Language	Colloquial Form	한국말 Korean language	일본말 Japanese language	중국말 Chinese language	프랑스말 French language	영어 English	외국말 Foreign language
	Literary Form	한국어 Korean	일본어 Japanese	중국어 Chinese	프랑스어 French	영어 English	외국어 Foreign

(▶ English language is an exception.)



## Honorific **-(으)세요**

When the subject of the sentence is a person who is older or in a higher position than the speaker, you can convey respect or honor by adding **-(으)시-** to the predicate of the sentence. You can also use the honorific form when asking a question in a respectful way. When conveying respect, add **-(으)세요** to the stem of a verb or an adjective for the present tense, **-(으)셨어요** for the past tense, and **-(으)실 거예요** for the future tense. In addition, in order to express respect for the subject of the sentence, **께서** can be used instead of the subject marker **이/가**.

- Normal 친구가 전화해요. A friend is calling.
- Honorific 아버지께서 전화하세요. My father is calling.
- Normal 친구가 신문을 읽어요. A friend is reading the newspaper.
- Honorific 어머니께서 신문을 읽으세요. My mother is reading the newspaper.

**-(으)세요** is an honorific form used when expressing respect towards the listener. Note that honorifics are used when asking questions to the listener, but not when responding about yourself.

- A 어디에 **가세요?** Where are you going?
- B (제가) 은행에 **가요.** (O) I'm going to the bank.  
(제가) 은행에 **가세요.** (X)

Some verbs mainly used in daily life such as **먹다, 마시다, 있다, 자다, 말하다** are replaced with honorific equivalent verbs **잡수시다, 드시다, 계시다, 주무시다, 말씀하시다** when conveying respect.

**! Be careful!**

The command form **-(으)세요** and the present honorific form **-(으)세요** have different meanings but are formed in the same way. However, the negative command form **-지 마세요** and the present tense negative honorific form **-지 않으세요** are different in both meaning and form. Be careful not to confuse them.

	The imperative form	The present tense honorific form
Affirmative	전화하세요. Call me.	아버지께서 자주 전화하세요. My father calls often.
Negative	전화하지 마세요. Don't call me.	아버지께서 자주 전화하지 않으세요. My father doesn't call often.

## Quiz Yourself !

**1~5** Yukiko is describing her mother in the following sentences. Complete the sentence by using the given verb.

**Ex.** 제 어머니는 지금 일본에 계세요. (있다)

1. 여행을 아주 \_\_\_\_\_ . (좋아하다)
2. 그래서 여행을 자주 \_\_\_\_\_ . (가다)
3. 어제도 어머니께서 저한테 \_\_\_\_\_ . (전화하다)
4. 지난달에 어머니가 한국에 \_\_\_\_\_ . (오다)
5. 그때 한국 음식을 많이 \_\_\_\_\_ . (먹다)



**6~8** Mark is asking questions using the honorific form in the following conversation. Complete the conversation by using the honorific form.

**Ex.** A 어디에서 일하세요 ?

B 우체국에서 일해요.

6. A 자주 텔레비전을 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B 네, 자주 봐요.

7. A 어제 어디에 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B 집에 있었어요.

8. A 어제 저녁에 무슨 책을 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B 한국 문화 책을 읽었어요.



Answer p.277

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 060

## (Noun)(이)세요?

Verifying the identity of a person with whom you should use honorifics

한국 분이세요?

Are you Korean?

→ 네, 한국 사람이에요.

→ Yes, I am Korean.

직장인이세요?

Are you an office worker?

→ 아니요, 학생이에요.

→ No, I am a student.

미국 분이세요?

Are you American?

→ 아니요, 캐나다 사람이에요.

→ No, I'm Canadian.

## 언제 -(으)셨어요?

Asking a question to a person with whom you should use honorifics

언제 한국에 오셨어요?

When did you come to Korea?

→ 일주일 전에 왔어요.

→ I came here a week ago.

언제 처음 서울에 오셨어요?

When did you first come to Seoul?

→ 이번에 처음 왔어요.

→ This is my first time.

언제 한국어 공부를 시작하셨어요?

When did you start studying Korean?

→ 작년에 시작했어요.

→ I started last year.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to personal information

나라 nation, country

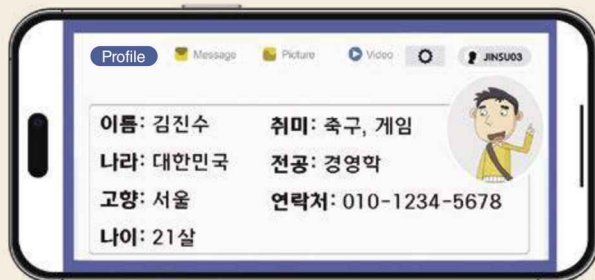
고향 hometown

나이 age

취미 hobby

전공 major (area of study)

연락처 contact information



# Conversation Rehearsal



track 061

## (place)에 다녀요/에서 일해요

Talking about what he does

무슨 일 하세요?

What do you do?

→ 회사에 다녀요.

→ I work at a company.

→ 학교에 다녀요.

→ I go to school.

→ 집에서 일해요.

→ I work at home.

→ 학원에서 일해요.

→ I work at a private educational institute.

## (required time) 걸려요

Talking the required time

여기에서 강남역까지 얼마나 걸려요?

How long does it take to get to Gangnam Station from here?

→ 30분쯤 걸려요.

→ It takes about 30 minutes.

→ 1시간쯤 걸려요.

→ It takes about an hour.

→ 오래 걸려요.

→ It takes a long time.

→ 얼마 안 걸려요.

→ It doesn't take long.

## Pronunciation Tip

### 못해요 [모태요]

For final consonants, only 7 sounds [ㄱ, ㄴ, ㄷ, ㄹ, ㅁ, ㅂ, ㅇ] can be pronounced. Many other final consonants ㄸ, ㅌ, ㅍ, ㅊ, ㅌ, ㅍ, ㅊ are pronounced as [ㄷ]. For example, 못 is pronounced as [몰]. When one of the final consonants ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅌ is followed by the initial consonant ㅍ in the next syllable, it is pronounced as [ㅋ, ㅌ, ㅍ, ㅊ] respectively. In the above example, the [ㄷ] in [몰] is followed by [ㅍ] in 해요 and is pronounced as [ㅌ]. As such, 못해요 is pronounced as [모태요].



track 062



## Coffee Break

### Various questions about age

Koreans often ask about age when they first meet because they have to use the proper speech style. To people in your age group, you can ask directly **나이가 어떻게 되세요?** (How old are you?). Indirectly, you can ask **몇 년생이세요?** (In what year were you born?) or **무슨 띠예요?** (Which zodiac sign are you?). When the person is clearly older than you, you can ask **연세가 어떻게 되세요?** (How old are you? - honorific)

### Korean names

It might seem difficult for foreigners to remember the names of Korean people. This is because many people share the same family name and Korean names often sound similar as they consist of three syllables. There are many people who have the same last name, and with the exception of a few cases, most Korean names sound similar as they consist of three syllables.

There are four dominant family names which comprise 49.6% of the names used by the general population. Of the four family names, 김 (Kim) is the most popular, being used by 21.6% of the population, followed by 이 (Lee) (14.8%), 박 (Park) (8.5%) and 최 (Choi) (4%). Since there are many people with the same last name, in Korea, people are rarely called exclusively by their last name. In the work setting, Koreans attach titles like 사장님 or 부장님 and regard individuals as 김 사장님 or 이 부장님. In private meetings, 씨 is added after a person's full name to convey respect. For example, the name 김진수 is not called 김 씨, but 김진수 씨.



Most Korean names consist of a one-syllable surname and two-syllable given name. Siblings often have a common syllable, which is called 돌림자 (*dollimja*; circling name – a part of name which has been set for each generation). Koreans still keep records of their family trees which are called 족보 (*jokbo*; genealogical tables). If you look into these records, you can see that the order of 돌림자 has already been set for the following generation, and easily understand the family order. For example, if three brothers' names are 박진호, 박영호, 박준호 with 호 as the *dollimja*, their sons in the next generation will have names like 박종원, 박종수 with 종 as the *dollimja*. Because of this *dollimja* system, the names of brothers in Korea sound alike but the names of fathers and sons are never the same as they can be in Western culture. There are no juniors in Korea. Recently, there are cases in which *dollimja* is not used.

One interesting point is that the family name of a Korean woman is not changed after marriage. In Korea, the family bloodline is important, so even if a woman gets married she retains her father's surname. So after marriage, a Korean woman keeps her family name while her husband and children share a family name.



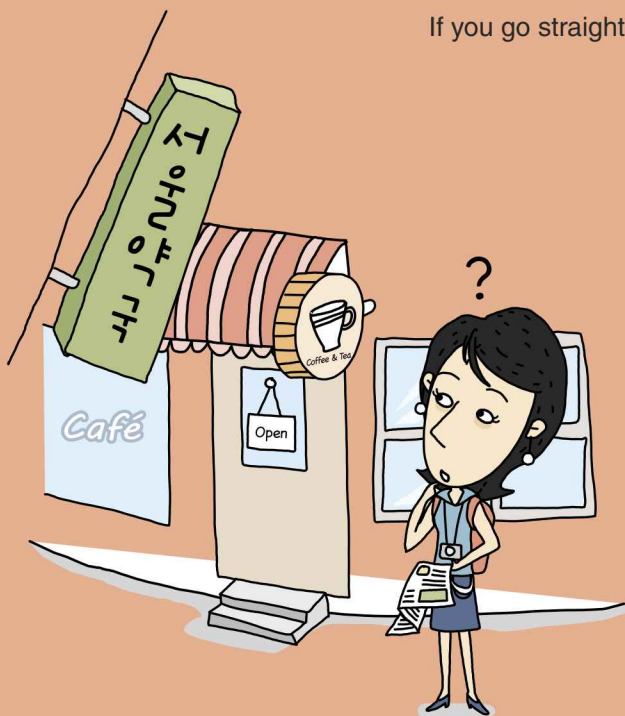
Scene **04**

On the street

Asking for directions to reach your destination

이쪽으로 쪽 가면  
오른쪽에 편의점이 있어요.

If you go straight this way, there is a convenience store on the right.



# Conversation



track 063



유키코 저……, 인사동에 어떻게 가요?

한국인 이쪽으로 쪽 가면 오른쪽에 편의점이 있어요.

유키코 네.

한국인 편의점 앞에서 횡단보도를 건너세요.

유키코 그다음은요?

한국인 조금 더 가면 약국이 보여요.

약국 앞에서 왼쪽으로 가면 인사동이에요.

유키코 감사합니다.

Yukiko Excuse me, how do I get to Insadong?

Korean If you go straight this way there's a convenience store on the right.

Yukiko I see.

Korean You should cross the crosswalk in front of the convenience store.

Yukiko And then?

Korean If you go a little further, you'll see a pharmacy. From the front of the pharmacy, if you turn to the left and go straight, Insadong is there.

Yukiko Thank you.

**New Vocabulary**

- 인사동 Insadong (a place in Seoul famous for Korean traditional stores and museums)
- 이쪽 this way, this direction
- 쪽 straight
- 오른쪽 the right side
- 편의점 convenience store
- 앞 in front of
- 횡단보도 crosswalk
- 건너다 to cross, go over
- 그다음 and then, next
- 조금 a little
- 더 more
- 보이다 to be seen
- 약국 pharmacy
- 왼쪽 the left side

**New Expressions**

- ...에 어떻게 가요? How do I get to...?
- 그다음은요? And then?
- ...이/가 보여요. You'll see...
- 고맙습니다. Thank you.

**Close-Up**

**1 그다음은요?**

(Asking for the next instruction)

In colloquial speech, repetitions are often omitted. When the same question is repeated, the repeated part is omitted, and **요** is added to express respect. In this conversation, repeated questions are omitted and **요** is added.

- (Ex.) A 어떻게 지내요?  
How are you?
- B 저는 잘 지내요. 진수 씨는요? (= 진수 씨는 어떻게 지내요?)  
I'm good. What about you? (= How are you, Jinsu?)
- A 저도 잘 지내요.  
I'm good too.

**2 The marker (으)로**

(Asking for the address of a place)

In Korean, when expressing a direction with a motion verb like **가다** or **오다**, the marker indicating direction is followed by the marker **(으)로**. For example, people point their hand and say, “**이쪽으로 가세요**”. On the other hand, when expressing the position of an object with the stative verb **있다**, the marker **에** is added after the word indicating the location. For example, say, “**화장실이 이쪽에 있어요**”.

**Flashback**

**• Expressions for locations**

책상 위  
on the desk

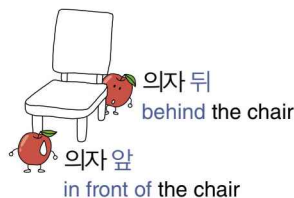


책상 옆  
next to the desk

책상 아래  
under the desk



컵하고 시계 사이  
between the cup and the clock



의자 뒤  
behind the chair

의자 앞  
in front of the chair



냉장고 안  
inside the refrigerator

냉장고 밖  
outside of the refrigerator

# Grammar in Focus



Grammar Chart p.269

## -(으)면 If...

-(으)면 indicates a conditional clause in a sentence. In Korean, a conditional clause always comes first and the main clause for stating a fact or situation follows. In the below example, the conditional clause, 오른쪽으로 꺾 가면 (If you go straight to the right), comes first and the main clause 인사동이에요 (Insadong is there) follows. -(으)면 is combined with a verb stem or an adjective stem. If the verb stem or adjective stem ends in a vowel, -면 is used, and if it ends in a consonant, -으면 is used.

-(으)면 is also used when expressing an assumption that is different from reality. For example, write the conditional clause 돈이 없으면 if you don't have money right now, but are imagining you have money. Then you can add the main clause 세계 여행을 갈 거예요 (I would travel around the world).

- 가다**      왼쪽으로 가면 약국이 있어요.  
If you turn to the left and go straight, the pharmacy is there.
- 오다**      내일 비가 안 오면 등산하러 갈 거예요.  
If it doesn't rain tomorrow, I will go hiking.
- 좋다**      날씨가 좋으면 같이 산책해요!  
If the weather is good, let's go for a walk together!
- ★ 듣다**    한국 음악을 많이 들으면 듣기를 잘할 거예요.  
If I listen to Korean music a lot, my listening will improve.
- ★ 춥다**    날씨가 추우면 다음에 만나요.  
If the weather is cold, let's meet later.

**! Be careful!**

When the stem ends with ㄹ, such as the verb 살다 (to live) or the adjective 멀다 (to be far), -면 is used instead of -으면 since 으 cannot come after the stem consonant ㄹ.

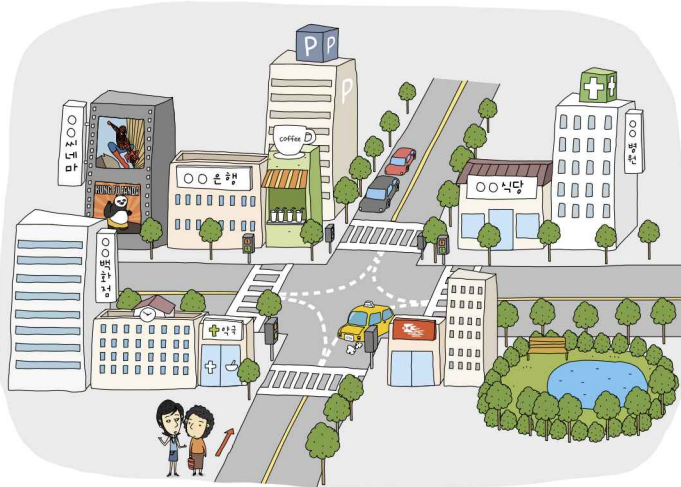
- 살다 → 살면 (O)      (Ex.) 한국에서 살면 한국어를 빨리 배울 거예요.  
                  살으면 (X)                   If I live in Korea, I'll learn Korean quickly.
- 멀다 → 멀면 (O)      (Ex.) 집이 학교에서 멀면 피곤할 거예요.  
                  멀으면 (X)                   If your home is far from school, you'll be tired.

## Quiz Yourself !

**1~4** Connect the condition with the result.

- |               |   |                     |
|---------------|---|---------------------|
| 1. 오른쪽으로 가면   | • | • ㉠ 그 옷을 안 살 거예요.   |
| 2. 날씨가 좋으면    | • | • ㉡ 산책할 거예요.        |
| 3. 한국 친구가 있으면 | • | • ㉢ 병원이 보여요.        |
| 4. 옷이 너무 비싸면  | • | • ㉣ 한국어를 빨리 배울 거예요. |

**5~7** Complete the conversation by looking at the map below.



5. A 실례합니다. 영화관이 어디에 있어요?  
 B 이쪽으로 쪽 가면 약국이 보여요. 횡단보도를 건너면 \_\_\_\_\_ 이/가 있어요.  
 약국에서 \_\_\_\_\_ 으로 가면 오른쪽에 있어요.
6. A 실례합니다. 공원이 어디에 있어요?  
 B 이쪽으로 쪽 가면 \_\_\_\_\_ 이/가 있어요. 길을 건너면 \_\_\_\_\_ 이/가 있어요.  
 우체국에서 \_\_\_\_\_ 으로 가면 공원이 오른쪽에 있어요.
7. A 실례합니다. 주차장이 어디에 있어요?  
 B 이쪽으로 \_\_\_\_\_ 가면 사거리가 보여요. 사거리를 지나서 가면 \_\_\_\_\_ 에 있어요.  
 카페 \_\_\_\_\_ 에 있어요.

Answer p.277

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 064

## -(으)면 (place)이/가 있어요/보여요

Explaining the way

박물관에 어떻게 가요?

How do I get to the museum?

➔ 왼쪽으로 가면 박물관이 있어요.

➔ If you go left, you'll see the museum.

지하철역에 어떻게 가요?

How do I get to the subway station?

➔ 오른쪽으로 가면 지하철역이 보여요.

➔ If you go right, you'll see the subway station.

식당에 어떻게 가요?

How do I get to the restaurant?

➔ 저 건물을 지나면 식당이 보여요.

➔ If you pass that building, you'll see the restaurant.

## -(으)면 -(으)세요

Making a request

횡단보도를 보면 건너세요.

If you see the crosswalk, cross the street.

약국이 보이면 오른쪽으로 가세요.

If you see the pharmacy, go right.

질문이 있으면 언제든지 물어보세요.

If you have a question, ask me anytime.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to the street

사거리 intersection, four-way stop

횡단보도 crosswalk

신호등 traffic light

간판 sign, billboard

골목 alley

쓰레기통 garbage can



# Conversation Rehearsal



track 065

## 이 근처에 (place)이/가 있어요?

Asking for information from a nearby place

이 근처에 화장실이 있어요?

→ 네, 2층에 있어요.

Is there a bathroom nearby?

→ Yes, it is on the second floor.

이 근처에 편의점이 있어요?

→ 네, 저기에 있어요.

Is there a convenience store nearby?

→ Yes, it is over there.

이 근처에 영화관이 있어요?

→ 네, 저 건물 뒤에 있어요.

Is there a movie theater nearby?

→ Yes, it's behind that building.

## 얼마나 멀리/오래/많이/자주 ...?

Asking how much

얼마나 멀리 가야 해요?

→ 500m쯤 가면 돼요.

How far do I have to go?

→ You have to go about 500 m.

얼마나 오래 가야 해요?

→ 10분쯤 가면 돼요.

How long do I have to go?

→ You have to go for around ten minutes.

사람이 얼마나 많이 있어요?

→ 100명쯤 있어요.

How many people are there?

→ About 100 people.

## Pronunciation Tip

앞 [ㅏ] / 앞에서 [아페서]

When a syllable ends with a final consonant, as in the first example above, the final consonant ㅏ, ㅑ is pronounced as [ㅏ], ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅗ, ㅛ, ㅜ, ㅠ is pronounced as [ㅓ] respectively. However, in the case of vowels, the final consonant of the syllable is pronounced in the initial consonant of the following syllable. As in the second example above, the consonant ㅓ is pronounced as [ㅏ] in [아페서].



track 066



## Coffee Break

### Asking for directions

Seoul has a 600-year history. Since the road was built in the past, there are many places where the road is not straight. The street names on the map are officially used in addresses, but they are different from the local names that people often use. That's why sometimes you can't find your way even with a map app. When navigating, it's a good idea to check for large buildings or famous landmarks near your destination. You can ask, 그 근처에 큰 빌딩 뭐가 있어요? (Is there a big building nearby?).

### ***How Koreans show courtesy and intimacy***

Koreans value hierarchy according to age and position. Likewise, the way they show manners and treat others changes accordingly. Thus, when dealing with someone who is older or of higher status, Koreans give a formal bow upon greeting and use both hands when shaking hands or handing something over. Even when shaking hands, which is a Western-style greeting, the right hand to shake hands is held in a position as if it is supported by the left hand. Even when drinking with an older person, Koreans often turn their body to avoid showing the drinking gesture to a more senior person in order to show respect.



However, just bowing your head or using both hands is not enough to consider someone polite. Eye contact is something Westerners consider important when communicating with other people, but it is burdensome for Koreans to make eye contact with elders. In Korea, when listening to senior people or being scolded, it is considered disrespectful to raise their heads and look directly into the eyes of the senior person. Instead, it is considered more polite if you bow your head slightly while listening to the senior person. Westerners may regard this behavior of not making eye contact as disrespectful, but Koreans consider it polite to avoid making eye contact with seniors. These cultural differences may lead to minor misunderstandings.

Some older Koreans pat the head or cheek of an unknown child they met on the street, and this behavior is also one of the ways to show intimacy. Some even give snacks like candy or chocolate to unfamiliar children. Westerners may think that it is strange, but Koreans think that it is a considerate gesture towards children.

Koreans value showing intimacy with peers as important as showing courtesy to seniors. For example, on the streets of Korea, you can often see young high school girls and college girls



holding hands or walking around with arms linked. It is common for Korean men to put their arms around each other's shoulders. For Koreans, same-sex physical contact does not indicate one's sexual orientation. It's just a way to show intimacy. There are differences from person to person, but it can be generally said that Koreans are more affectionate in their relationships compared to Westerners.



# Chapter 2

Preparing the necessary items  
for living in Korea

**Scene 05** At the immigration office

**Scene 06** At a real estate agency

**Scene 07** At a phone store

**Scene 08** At a restaurant



마크 로빈슨 (미국)  
Mark Robinson (USA)

# **Chapter 2**

**Preparing the necessary items for living in Korea**

# Scene 05

At the immigration office

Applying for a foreigner registration card

외국인 등록증을  
신청하고 싶어요.

I want to apply for a foreigner registration card.



# Conversation



track 067



마크 외국인 등록증을 신청하고 싶어요.

직원 신청서를 주세요.

마크 여기 있어요.

직원 여권하고 사진 주세요.

마크 여기요. 외국인 등록증이 언제 나와요?

직원 2주 후에 나와요.

마크 우편으로 받고 싶어요.

직원 알겠습니다. 여기에 주소를 써 주세요.

Mark I'd like to apply for a foreigner registration card.

Officer Please, pass me your application form.

Mark Here it is.

Officer Please, give me your passport and a photo (of yourself).

Mark Here you go. When will the foreigner registration card be issued?

Officer It'll be issued in two weeks.

Mark I would like to receive it by mail.

Officer I see. Please, write your address here.

▶ **New Vocabulary**

- 외국인 foreigner
- 등록증 registration card
- 신청하다 to apply
- 신청서 application form
- 여기 here
- 여권 passport
- 하고 and
- 사진 photo
- 주다 to give
- 언제 when
- 나오다 to be issued, come out
- 주 week
- 후 after, later
- 우편 mail
- 받다 to receive, get
- 주소 mailing address
- 쓰다 to write

▶ **New Expressions**

- ...을/를 주세요. Please, give me...
- 여기 있어요. Here it is.
- 여기요. Here you go.

▶ **Close-Up**

**1 The marker 하고**

(Adding multiple nouns)

The marker 하고 is written after a noun to indicate that the preceding noun is added to the noun that follows. Whether the preceding noun ends in a vowel or a consonant, 하고 is added. Instead of 하고, you can use the 와/과 or (이)랑. 와/과 is mainly used in formal or written forms and (이)랑 is used in the colloquial. The marker 하고 can be used in both formal and colloquial forms.

- ⓔ 사과하고 포도를 먹어요.(= 사과와 포도, 사과랑 포도)  
I eat apples and grapes.
- ⓔ 책하고 가방을 샀어요.(= 책과 가방, 책이랑 가방)  
I bought a book and a bag.

**2 The marker (으)로**

(Indicating the means by which something is done)

(으)로 is a marker used to convey a means of or way. If the preceding noun ends in a vowel or ends in a consonant ㄹ, 로 is combined, and if the preceding noun ends in a consonant, 으로 is combined.

- ⓔ 매일 버스로 집에 가요.  
I go home by bus every day.
- ⓔ 청구서는 이메일로 보내 주세요.  
Please, send the bill by e-mail.
- ⓔ 검은색 펜으로 이름을 써요.  
Write your name with a black pen.

**Flashback**

• **Expressing time based on the present**

Let's review the expressions for indicating specific points in time based on the present. Note that days, weeks, and years are read with Sino-Korean numbers (일, 이, 삼), and the month is read with native Korean numbers (하나, 둘, 셋).

그저께 the day before yesterday	어제 yesterday	현재 오늘 today	내일 tomorrow	모레 the day after tomorrow
지지난 주 the week before last week	지난주 last week	이번 주 this week	다음 주 next week	다다음 주 the week after next week
지지난달 the month before last month	지난달 last month	이번 달 this month	다음 달 next month	다다음 달 the month after next month
재작년 the year before last year	작년 last year	올해 this year	내년 next year	후년 the year after next year



## -고 싶다 want to...

-고 싶다 is used to express your desire to do something. Simply add -고 싶다 to the verb stem, regardless of whether the verb stem ends in a vowel or a consonant. The subject of the sentence -고 싶다 can be used only in the first person form when it is a declarative sentence, and only in the second person when it is an interrogative sentence. However, it is worthwhile noting that Koreans often omit the first person subject 저는 in colloquial speech.

하다	한국어를 잘하고 싶어요.	I want to speak Korean well.
마시다	커피를 마시고 싶어요.	I want to drink some coffee.
먹다	한국 음식을 먹고 싶어요.	I want to eat Korean food.
보다	재미있는 한국 영화를 보고 싶어요.	I want to see a good Korean movie.
살다	A 어디에서 살고 싶어요?	Where do you want to live?
	B 서울에서 살고 싶어요.	I want to live in Seoul.

To express the speaker's past desires, combine the past tense marker -았/었- with 싶다 as -고 싶었다.

받다	생일 때 선물로 화장품을 받고 싶었어요. I wanted to receive makeup as a gift for my birthday.
	지난달에 제주도에 여행 가고 싶었어요. 그런데 시간이 없었어요. Last month, I wanted to go on a trip to Jeju Island. But I had no time.

### ! Be careful!

In a declarative sentence, the third person subject cannot be used with -고 싶다, but can be used with -고 싶어 하다.

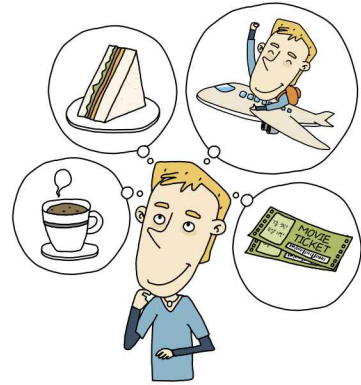
- (Ex.) 마크 씨가 한국어를 잘하고 싶어요. (X)  
마크 씨가 한국어를 잘하고 싶어 해요. (O) Mark wants to speak Korean well.

# Quiz Yourself !

**1~3** Look at the picture and complete the sentence by using -고 싶다.

**Ex.** 좀 추워요. 커피를 마시고 싶어요.

1. 배가 고파요.  
샌드위치를 \_\_\_\_\_.
2. 다음 주에 휴가가 시작해요.  
휴가 때 제주도에 \_\_\_\_\_.
3. 이번 주말에 시간이 있어요.  
친구하고 영화를 \_\_\_\_\_.



**4~8** Connect the question and answer. Complete the sentence by using -고 싶다.

- |                          |   |                          |
|--------------------------|---|--------------------------|
| <b>Ex.</b> 언제 여행 가고 싶어요? | • | ㉠ 불고기를 _____.            |
| 4. 누구를 만나고 싶어요?          | • | ㉡ 친구하고 영화를 _____.        |
| 5. 뭐 먹고 싶어요?             | • | ㉢ 부모님을 _____.            |
| 6. 무슨 운동을 배우고 싶어요?       | • | ㉣ 은행에서 _____.            |
| 7. 어디에서 일하고 싶어요?         | • | ㉤ 여름에 <u>여행 가고 싶어요</u> . |
| 8. 누구하고 영화를 보고 싶어요?      | • | ㉥ 태권도를 _____.            |

Answer p.277

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 068

## -고 싶는데요

Initiating a conversation by stating the purpose of your visit

비자를 바꾸고 싶는데요.

I want to change my visa.

비자를 연장하고 싶는데요.

I want to extend my visa.

외국인 등록증을 신청하고 싶는데요.

I want to apply for a foreigner registration card.

비자를 신청하고 싶는데요.

I want to apply for a visa.

## -고 싶어요

Answering questions about the purpose of your visit

무엇을 도와드릴까요?

How can I help you?

➔ 예약하고 싶어요.

➔ I want to make a reservation.

➔ 예약을 취소하고 싶어요.

➔ I want to cancel the reservation.

➔ 예약을 목요일로 바꾸고 싶어요.

➔ I want to change the reservation to Thursday.

➔ 예약을 다음 주로 연기하고 싶어요.

➔ I want to postpone the reservation to next week.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to documents

성 family name

이름 first name

성별 gender

생년월일 date of birth

주소 address

국적 country of citizenship

신청서		
개인 정보		
성	로빈슨	이름 아크
성별	남성	
국적	미국	
생년월일	1999년 10월 1일	
주소	서울시 마포구 관대리로 64-1 아포아파트 401호	
연락처	010-9876-5432	



# Conversation Rehearsal



track 069

## (Noun) 주세요

Asking for something

여권 주세요.

Passport, please.

신분증 주세요.

ID, please.

사진 주세요.

Photo, please

증명서 주세요.

Certificate, please.

## -(으)러 왔어요

Talking about the specific purpose of your visit

왜 한국에 오셨어요?

Why did you come to Korea?

→ 일하러 왔어요.

→ I'm here to work.

→ 여행하러 왔어요.

→ I came to travel.

→ 가족을 만나러 왔어요.

→ I'm here to see my family.

→ 한국어를 공부하러 왔어요.

→ I came to study Korean

## Pronunciation Tip

### 등록증 [등녹짱]

When a final consonant ㅇ or ㅁ is followed by an initial consonant ㄹ in the next syllable, this ㄹ is pronounced as [ㄴ]. In the above example, because the final consonant ㅇ in 등 is followed by the initial consonant ㄹ in 록, this ㄹ is pronounced as [ㄴ]. So 등록 is pronounced as [등녹]. And, consonants like ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ that follow the final consonant [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ] are pronounced as [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ]. Therefore, 등록증 is pronounced as [등녹짱].



track 070



## Coffee Break

### Useful vocabulary to know before visiting the immigration office

It is not easy for a foreigner who is not familiar with Korean to apply independently for documentation at the immigration office. If there is no Korean to ask for help, it is a good idea to familiarize yourself with basic terms before visiting. Terms such as 신청, 연장 or 변경 for a visa or 신청 or 재발급 for an alien registration card are notable examples.

### Taboos in Korean life



In old buildings in Korea, you can see an F written on the elevator instead of the fourth floor. Even in buildings that were built earlier, there are cases where unit 403 is followed by 405 without 404. This is because the pronunciation of the number 4 by Koreans is the same as the pronunciation of the Sino-Korean number 사 meaning death. Despite these superstitions, buildings these days mark the 4th floor and unit 404, but Koreans still avoid 4 because they think it is related to death.

Similarly, there is a reluctance to write names in red. Occasionally, a foreigner writes his or her name or someone else's name with a red pen. At that time, most Koreans will be surprised and recommend that you write your name in a different color. In Korea, only the names of the deceased are written in red. In other words, it would be rude to write the name of a living person in red.

Do not stick spoons or chopsticks up-front in a meal even when eating. This is because positioning a spoon or chopsticks in the up-front position is an act of setting up food for a deceased ancestor and offering a meal to a ghost. If you ever get a chance to dine with Koreans, you can see that Koreans never leave their spoons and chopsticks upfront in their food.



If you ever have a chance to learn the traditional Korean greeting method, 절, remember that the number of times you bow is important. Even now, Koreans bow when they want to convey a heartfelt greeting. For example, when a man visits the bride's parents for marriage permission, he usually greets them with a bow. However, at this time, you must bow to the living person only once. This is because Koreans bow twice only to the dead. Therefore, Koreans only bow twice to the deceased at a funeral or when performing ancestral rites or rites.

Koreans dislike those who sit on a chair and shake their legs. Since ancient times, Korean adults have warned children who shake their legs by saying, "If you shake your legs, good fortune will run away." If you meet an elderly person in Korea, you should not shake your legs. If you are invited to a Korean house, be careful not to step on the doorsill. Koreans believe that if you step on the doorsill, good fortune will "run away". In addition, in Korea, it is still taboo to cut your nails or whistle at night and to sleep with your head facing north.

# Scene 06

At the real estate agency

Finding a house

## 지금 이 집을 볼 수 있어요?

Can I view this house now?



# Conversation



track 071



마크 부동산 앱에서 집을 봤어요.

중개인 그래요? 저한테 보여 주세요.

마크 *(Pointing at the phone)* 이 집이에요.  
지금 이 집을 볼 수 있어요?

중개인 네, 볼 수 있어요.

마크 언제 이사할 수 있어요?

중개인 계약하면 바로 이사할 수 있어요.

마크 그럼, 지금 집을 보고 싶어요.

중개인 알겠어요. 지금 갑시다.

Mark I saw a house (that I am interested in) on a real estate app.

Agent Really? Please, show it to me.

Mark *(Pointing at the phone)* This is the house. Can I view this house now?

Agent Yes, you can view it.

Mark When can I move in?

Agent You can move in immediately after signing a contract.

Mark Then, I would like to view the house now.

Agent Alright. Let's go (together to view it).

## New Vocabulary

부동산	real estate
앱	app (application)
집	house
보다	more than
저	that
한테	to
보여 주다	to show, display
지금	now
이사하다	to move
계약하다	to make a contract
바로	immediately
그럼	then

## New Expressions

그래요?	Really?
저한테 보여 주세요.	Please, show it to me.
이 집이에요.	This is the house.
지금 집을 보고 싶어요.	I would like to view the house now.
지금 갑시다.	Let's go now.

## Close-Up

### 1 The marker 한테

(Referring to an objective or affiliation)

The marker 한테 is used with verbs such as 주다, 보내다 to indicate giving or sending something to someone. The marker 한테 has the same meaning as 에게. The marker 한테 is mainly used in colloquial and informal forms, and 에게 is mainly used in written and formal forms.

- (Ex.) 제가 친구한테 문자를 보내요.  
I'm texting my friend. (= 친구에게)
- (Ex.) 어머니가 이웃한테 도움을 주고 있어요.  
My mother is helping a neighbor. (= 이웃에게)

### 2 -(으)십시오

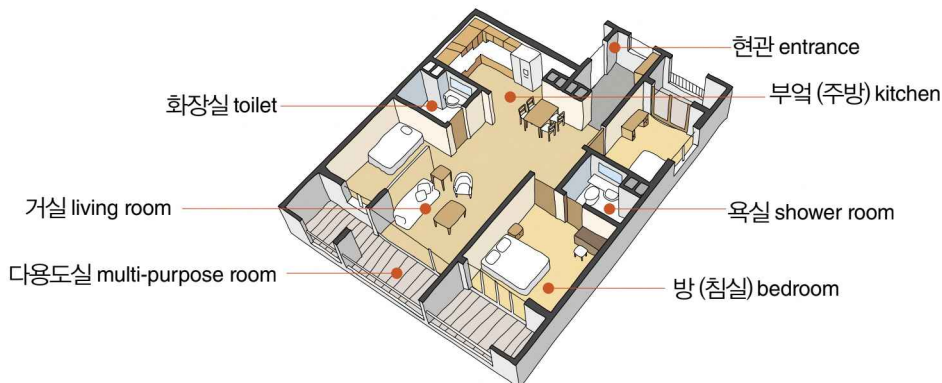
(Expressing what is going to be done)

-(으)십시오 proposes an action in the formal form. It is usually used when discussing something and finally reaching a conclusion about how to do something. It is better to use -(으)십시오 towards the end of the discussion, because it can give off a conclusive, demanding tone. -(으)십시오 is combined with a verb. If the stem of the verb ends in a vowel, -십시오 is used. If the stem ends in a consonant, -으십시오 is used.

- (Ex.) 밥 먹으러 갑시다. Let's go eat.

## Flashback

### • Names for rooms in a Korean house





## -(으)ㄹ 수 있다 can

-(으)ㄹ 수 있다 is used with verbs and adjectives to express that something is possible or that someone is able to do something. When a verb stem or an adjective stem ends in a vowel, -ㄹ 수 있다 is used, and if a verb stem or an adjective stem ends in a consonant, -을 수 있다 is used.

- 하다** 폴 씨는 중국어를 할 수 있어요. Paul can speak Chinese.
- 읽다** 저는 한자를 읽을 수 있어요. I can read Sino-Korean characters.
- 받다** 30분 후에 전화를 받을 수 있어요. I can speak in 30 minutes (lit. I can receive your phone call in 30 minutes.)
- ★만들다** 저는 한국 음식을 만들 수 있어요. I can make Korean food.
- ★덥다** 오늘 이 옷이 더울 수 있어요. These clothes may be too hot for today.

Use -(으)ㄹ 수 없다 to express an impossibility of a certain situation or incapability to carry out an action.

- 치다** 새라 씨는 피아노를 칠 수 없어요. (= 못 쳐요) Sarah cannot play piano.
- 먹다** A 유키코 씨는 매운 음식을 먹을 수 있어요?  
Yukiko, can you eat spicy food?  
B 아니요, 저는 매운 음식을 먹을 수 없어요. (= 못 먹어요)  
No. I cannot eat spicy food.
- ★들다** 시끄러워서 여기에서 음악을 들을 수 없어요. (= 못 들어요)  
It is noisy so I cannot hear the music here.

When indicating that an action could have been performed or the possibility of a certain situation in the past, the past tense marker -았/었- is combined with 있다 and used in the form of -(으)ㄹ 수 있었다.

- 만나다** 어제 저는 친구를 만날 수 없었어요.  
I was unable to meet my friend yesterday.
- 타다** 전에 커피를 가지고 버스에 탈 수 있었어요.  
In the past, I was able to get on the bus with coffee.

# Quiz Yourself !

**1~5** Look at the picture and choose the correct answer.



마크



진수



마크



진수



마크



진수

**Ex.** 마크는 수영을  할 수 있어요.  
 할 수 없어요.

**1.** 진수는 수영을  할 수 있어요.  
 할 수 없어요.

**2.** 마크는 생선을  먹을 수 있어요.  
 먹을 수 없어요.

**3.** 진수는 생선을  먹을 수 있어요.  
 먹을 수 없어요.

**4.** 마크는 한국 음식을  만들 수 있어요.  
 만들 수 없어요.

**5.** 진수는 한국 음식을  만들 수 있어요.  
 만들 수 없어요.

**6~8** Complete the conversation by using -(으)ㄹ 수 있다 or -(으)ㄹ 수 없다.

**Ex.** A 영어를 할 수 있어요?  
 B 네, 할 수 있어요.

**6.** A 한자를 읽을 수 있어요?  
 B 아니요, \_\_\_\_\_.

**7.** A 이번 주말에 만날 수 있어요?  
 B 네, \_\_\_\_\_.

**8.** A 혼자 한복을 입을 수 있어요?  
 B 아니요, \_\_\_\_\_.

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 072

## 지금 -(으)ㄴ 수 있어요?

Asking if it is possible

지금 만날 수 있어요?

Can we meet now?

지금 얘기할 수 있어요?

Can we talk now?

지금 출발할 수 있어요?

Can we leave now?

지금 계약할 수 있어요?

Can I sign a contract now?

## -(으)면 바로 -(으)ㄴ 수 있어요

Talking about possible conditions

준비되면 바로 출발할 수 있어요.

When you're ready, you can leave right away.

전화하면 바로 예약할 수 있어요.

You can make a reservation right away by calling.

신청하면 바로 시작할 수 있어요.

Once you apply, you can start right away.

문제가 생기면 바로 취소할 수 있어요.

If something goes wrong, you can cancel it right away.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to the house

- 보증금 security deposit
- 월세 monthly rent
- 관리비 maintenance fees
- 계약금 down payment
- 중개인 broker
- 집주인 landlord





# Conversation Rehearsal



track 073

(description of the house) 집을 찾고 있어요

Specifically describing the house you are looking for

어떤 집을 찾고 있어요?

What house are you looking for?

→ 새 집을 찾고 있어요.

→ I'm looking for a new house.

→ 싼 집을 찾고 있어요.

→ I'm looking for an affordable house.

→ 조용한 집을 찾고 있어요.

→ I'm looking for a quiet house.

→ 지하철역 근처 집을 찾고 있어요.

→ I'm looking for a house near a subway station.

-(으)면 좋겠어요

Saying the price you want to pay

한 달에 50만 원 정도면 좋겠어요.

I hope it is around 500,000 won per month.

한 달에 60만 원 정도면 좋겠어요.

I hope it is around 600,000 won per month.

보증금 1,000만 원에 월세 50만 원 정도면 좋겠어요.

It would be nice if the deposit is 10 million won and the monthly rent is 500,000 won.

보증금 없고 월세 60만 원 정도면 좋겠어요.

It would be nice if there is no deposit and the monthly rent is around 600,000 won.

## Pronunciation Tip

볼 수 있어요 [볼 수 이씨요]

The initial sound ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ which is followed by the noun modifier -(으)ㄹ is pronounced as [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ]. In the above example, the ㅅ of 수 follows after 볼 and is pronounced as [ㅅ]. Therefore, 볼 수 is pronounced as [볼 수]. Also, in the above example, the ㅅ of 있어요 is pronounced as [이씨요] as the ㅅ in ㅅ moves to become the initial consonant of the next syllable. Thus, 볼 수 있어요 is pronounced as [볼 수 이씨요].



track 074



## Coffee Break

### Paying rent in Korea: 월세, 전세, 연세

When taking on a lease of a house, it is common to put down about 2-3 months' payment of rent and a security deposit. But when renting a house in Korea, there is a unique system called 전세 in addition to monthly rent. When looking for a house, you can ask for a 전세 or monthly rent according to your circumstances. In addition, on Jeju Island, there are cases when the cumulative annual monthly rent is added to the yearly rent.

### ***Apartment culture in Korea***

As Korea is regarded as a 'republic of apartments', apartment buildings are the iconic housing type. In particular, in densely populated urban areas such as Seoul, apartments are an efficient form of housing. However, if you think that apartments are a way of living for ordinary people, you are mistaken. Apartments in Seoul are a representative residential culture of the middle class, and even in the wealthy neighborhoods of Seoul, there are apartments boasting high housing prices.

Why do Koreans like apartments? First of all, apartments have the advantage of being easy to manage. Since apartments have a management office, the management office is responsible for managing mini parks and playgrounds in the apartment and managing waste separation and collection. In addition, the management office is responsible for managing various problems such as parking issues and noise between floors that may occur in an apartment complex.

The apartment is also effective for preventing crime. There are many security cameras (CCTV) installed in the apartment, so you can think of it as good for crime prevention. But above all else, there is an element of anonymity as all the suites in the apartment look the same from the outside. No matter how fancy the interior of an apartment house is, the front door and apartment window seen from the outside are the same, so any house appears the same from the outside. This feature fits the characteristics of Koreans who prefer not to stand out.

Moreover, Koreans prefer apartments because they can expect a rise in real estate prices while enjoying the convenience of living. Since apartments are preferred, an apartment has better cash flow than a single-family house. When looking at the trend of real estate prices in Korea, apartment price trends reveal how apartments are the representative housing type in Korea.



However, these days, people who yearn for a different life in the city are starting to try various housing methods other than apartments.

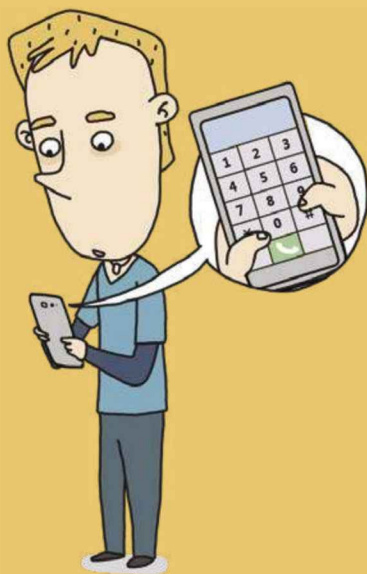
# Scene 07

At a phone store

Opening a cell phone account

## 얼마 동안 돈을 내야 돼요?

For how long do I have to pay?





- 직원 어서 오세요.
- 마크 핸드폰을 보고 싶어요.
- 직원 여기 핸드폰이 많이 있어요. 천천히 보세요.
- 마크 이거 얼마예요?
- 직원 잠시만요, 핸드폰 가격하고 요금이 한 달에 6만 원이에요.
- 마크 얼마 동안 돈을 내야 돼요?
- 직원 2년 동안 돈을 내야 돼요.
- 마크 그래요? 이거 좀 볼 수 있어요?
- 직원 그럼요.

- Employee Welcome.
- Mark I would like to see some cell phones.
- Employee There are a lot of cell phones here. Please, take your time.
- Mark How much is this?
- Employee One moment. The price of the cell phone, inclusive of charges, is 60,000 won per month.
- Mark For how long do I have to pay?
- Employee You have to pay for two years.
- Mark Really? Can I look at this one?
- Employee Sure.

▶ **New Vocabulary**

- 핸드폰 cell phone
- 많이 a lot
- 천천히 slowly, leisurely
- 이거 this one
- 얼마 how much
- 가격 price
- 요금 charge, fee
- 달 month
- 얼마 동안 how long
- 돈 money
- 돈을 내다 to pay
- 년 year

▶ **New Expressions**

- 어서 오세요. Welcome.
- 천천히 보세요. Please, take your time.
- 이거 얼마예요? How much is this?
- 잠시만요. One moment.
- 한 달에 6만 원이에요.  
60,000 won per month.
- 이거 좀 볼 수 있어요?  
Can I look at this one?
- 그럼요. Of course.

▶ **Close-Up**

1 **이거**

(Defining a subject or an object )

이거 is used colloquially with the same meaning as 이것. In colloquial speech, the subject marker 이/가 and the object marker 을/를 tend to be omitted, so 이거 is used both as a subject and as an object in conversations. In this conversation, the first 이거 is used as the subject with the same meaning as 이것이, and the second 이거 is used as an object with the same meaning as 이것을.

- (Ex.) 이거 맛있어요. (= 이것이)  
This is tasty.
- (Ex.) 어제 저는 이거 샀어요. (= 이것을)  
Yesterday, I bought this.

2 **The marker 에**

(Indicating a limited range)

The marker 에 is not only used to indicate a place but is also used to indicate scope or range. In this conversation, 한 달에 highlights the limit of 한 달. However, remember that, unlike in English, a range or group is written first, followed by a specific quantity such as the numerical frequency or cost.

- (Ex.) 하루에 2번 커피를 마셔요.  
I drink coffee twice a day.
- (Ex.) 사과 8개에 만 원이에요.  
It costs 10,000 won for 8 apples.

**Flashback**

• **Reading prices**

Sino-Korean numbers are used when reading Korean money.



▶ Korean people count prices not by 천 (thousand) but by 만 (ten thousand).

However, only when the monetary amount starts with 1, the first digit is read without 일.

- (Ex.) 160원 백육십원 (일백 육십 원 X)      15,000원 만오천원 (일만 오천 원 X)
- 1,800원 천팔백원 (일천 팔백 원 X)      ▶ **Exception** 100,000,000원 일억 원



## -아/어야 되다 have to, must...

-아/어야 되다 is used when a certain condition is necessary or there is a prerequisite. -아/어야 되다 is combined with verbs and adjectives. The verb 하다 (for example 일하다, 공부하다, etc.) or the adjective 하다 (for example 유명하다, 피곤하다, etc.) are used as 해야 되다. When the stem ends with a vowel ㅏ or ㅑ, -아야 되다 is attached to the stem. In all other cases, -어야 되다 is attached to the stem. -아/어야 되다 can be used interchangeably with -아/어야 하다 without any difference in meaning.

- |       |                              |  |
|-------|------------------------------|--|
| 공부하다  | 학생이 열심히 공부 <b>해야</b> 돼요.     | Students must study hard.                    |
| 친절하다  | 직원이 손님에게 친절 <b>해야</b> 돼요.    | The staff must be kind to customers.         |
| 기다리다  | 얼마나 기다리 <b>야</b> 돼요?         | How long do I have to wait?                  |
| 오다    | 직원은 10시까지 와 <b>야</b> 돼요.     | Employees have to arrive by 10 o'clock.      |
| 먹다    | 아이들은 과일을 많이 먹 <b>어야</b> 돼요.  | Children have to eat a lot of fruit.         |
| 좋다    | 이번 일요일에 날씨가 좋 <b>아야</b> 돼요.  | The weather has to be good this Sunday.      |
| ★ 크다  | 농구 선수가 되려면 키가 커 <b>야</b> 돼요. | To be a basketball player, you must be tall. |
| ★ 부르다 | 한 사람씩 노래를 부르 <b>야</b> 돼요.    | You must sing one by one.                    |

There is a passive meaning to 되다 in -아/어야 되다, so it can be used softly compared to -아/어야 하다. -아/어야 되다 is mainly used in informal or colloquial forms, and -아/어야 하다 is mainly used in formal or written forms.

- |     |                                       |   |
|-----|---------------------------------------|---|
| 마시다 | 물을 많이 마 <b>셔야</b> 돼요.                 | You have to drink a lot of water.       |
| 하다  | 운전할 때에는 운전 <b>에</b> 집중 <b>해야</b> 합니다. | When driving, you have to stay focused. |

**! Be careful!**

When something doesn't need to be done, add -지 않아도 되다 to the end of the stem.

**(Ex)** 여러 가지 신경 쓰**지** 않아도 돼요.  
You don't need to care for so many things.

**(Ex)** 배부르면 끝까지 다 먹**지** 않아도 돼요.  
You don't need to eat it all.

## Quiz Yourself !

**1~4** Choose the correct answer to complete the sentence.

**Ex.** 많이 아파요. 그러면 ① 공원에 가야 돼요.

②  병원에 가야 돼요.

1. 배가 고파요. 그러면 ① 음식을 먹어야 돼요.

② 음식을 안 먹어야 돼요.

2. 한국어를 잘하고 싶어요. 그러면 ① 한국어를 공부해야 돼요.

② 일본어를 공부해야 돼요.

3. 극장에서 영화를 보고 싶어요. 그러면 ① 돈을 사야 돼요.

② 표를 사야 돼요.

4. 아이들이 자요. 그러면 ① 조용해야 돼요.

② 시끄러워야 돼요.

**5~7** Complete the sentences by using -아/어야 되다.



**Ex.** 먼저, 매일 30분씩 운동해야 돼요.  
(운동하다)

5. 그리고 채소를 많이 \_\_\_\_\_.  
(먹다)

6. 또 물을 많이 \_\_\_\_\_.  
(마시다)

7. 마지막으로, 스트레스가 \_\_\_\_\_.  
(없다)

Answer p.278

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 076

## 얼마 동안 -아/어야 돼요?

Asking about the amount of time needed

얼마 동안 기다려야 돼요?

For how long do I have to **wait**?

얼마 동안 돈을 내야 돼요?

For how long do I have to **pay**?

얼마 동안 병원에 다녀야 돼요?

For how long do I have to **go to the hospital**?

얼마 동안 아르바이트해야 돼요?

For how long do I have to **work part-time**?

## -까지 -아/어야 돼요

Talking about conditions

오늘까지 신청해야 돼요.

You **must apply by today**.

내일까지 가입해야 돼요.

You **must sign up by tomorrow**.

다음 주까지 준비해야 돼요.

You **must be ready by next week**.

이번 달까지 기다려야 돼요.

You **must wait until this month**.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to phones

전원을 켜다 to turn on the power

전원을 끄다 to turn off the power

충전하다 to charge, recharge

비밀번호 password

문자 메시지 text message

음성 메시지 voice message





# Conversation Rehearsal



track 077

## -아/어 봐도 돼요?

Asking permission from a worker

이거 만져 봐도 돼요?

Can I touch this?

이거 먹어 봐도 돼요?

Can I try this? (lit. Can I eat this?)

이거 입어 봐도 돼요?

Can I wear this?

이거 신어 봐도 돼요?

Can I try this on?

## -(으)ㄴ/는 게 뭐예요?

Asking a worker

요즘 인기가 많은 게 뭐예요?

What's popular these days?

요즘 평이 좋은 게 뭐예요?

What's favorably received these days?

요즘 많이 팔리는 게 뭐예요?

What sells well these days?

요즘 많이 세일하는 게 뭐예요?

What's on sale these days?

## Pronunciation Tip

### 육만 원 [융마 님]

When the sound of the final consonant [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ] position is followed by the initial consonant ㄴ, ㄹ in the next syllable, [ㄱ] is pronounced as [ㅇ], [ㄷ] is pronounced as [ㄴ], and [ㅂ] is pronounced as [ㅁ]. The consonant ㄴ in 만 moves to the first sound of the next syllable, 원, which begins with a vowel, and is pronounced as [마 님]. Therefore, 육만 원 is pronounced as [융마 님].



track 078



## Coffee Break

### Another way to read phone numbers

Sino-Korean numbers are used when reading phone numbers. However, even for Koreans, 1 (일) and 2 (이) sound similar. In order to clearly distinguish the two numbers, 1 is oftentimes read as 하나 (native Korean number) and 2 is read as 이 (Sino-Korean number). For example, if you read the number 3123, you'd say 삼-하나-이-삼. When there are many zeros like 5000 or 7000, it is sometimes read as 오천 번 or 칠천 번.

### *The figures on Korean banknotes*

“Won” is the official currency of South Korea. The current design of Korean banknotes was decided for 1,000 won, 5,000 won, and 10,000 won in the 1980s, and 50,000 won was added in the 2000s. What is unusual is that all the characters of the current four types of Korean banknotes are from the Joseon Dynasty. In recent years, the use of cash has significantly decreased due to credit cards or mobile phones, but you can still think about the value of a country by looking at the banknotes of that country.



First, the person found on the 1,000 won bill is 퇴계 이황 (1501–1570), an iconic Confucian scholar in the mid-Joseon period. Next to 퇴계 이황 are the plum blossoms he liked (a flower that symbolizes the scholastic spirit) and Sungkyunkwan Myeongnyundang (International Student School) where he studied and trained junior scholars. 퇴계 이황, a master of Neo-Confucianism, thought it was important to put effort into learning. This sentiment is encapsulated in the bill itself.



Next, the person engraved on the 5,000 won bill is 울곡 이이 (1536–1584), another iconic Confucian scholar in the mid-Joseon Dynasty. 울곡 이이 along with 퇴계 이황 is considered the best Confucian scholars of the Joseon Dynasty. However, unlike 퇴계 이황, 울곡 이이 interests centered on social reform. He focused on living an upright life and emphasized the practice of learning. On the banknote, next to 울곡 이이 is Ojukheon, the place of his birth.



The figure engraved on the 10,000 won banknote is the fourth king of the Joseon Dynasty, 세종대왕 이도 (1397–1450). As King Sejong the Great is well known for inventing and promulgating Hangeul, 용비어천가 (the first book written in Korean) and 일월오봉도 (the symbol of the king) are drawn next to King Sejong on the banknotes. King Sejong, who prayed for the people to live comfortably and prosperously, achieved numerous scientific achievements such as the advent of Hangeul, clocks, and other astronomic observational instruments.



Lastly, the person found on the 50,000 won bill is 신사임당 (1504–1551), a female artist of the Joseon Dynasty. She is the only woman on Korean banknotes and the mother of 울곡 이이. Although women were excluded from social roles in the Joseon Dynasty, 신사임당 flourished in the arts while cultivating scholarship. 신사임당's representative works, 목포도도 (a picture of grapes) and 초충도수병 are depicted next to her on the banknote.

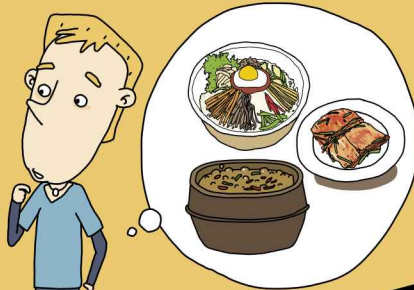
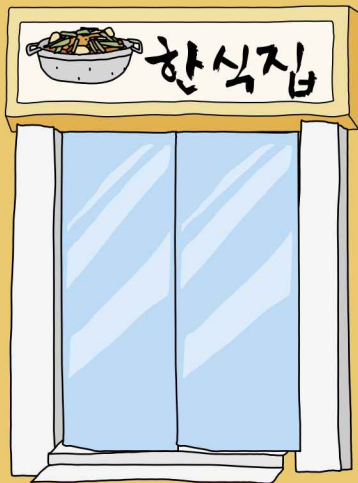
Scene **08**

At a restaurant

Ordering food at a restaurant

제가 매운 음식을 못 먹어요.

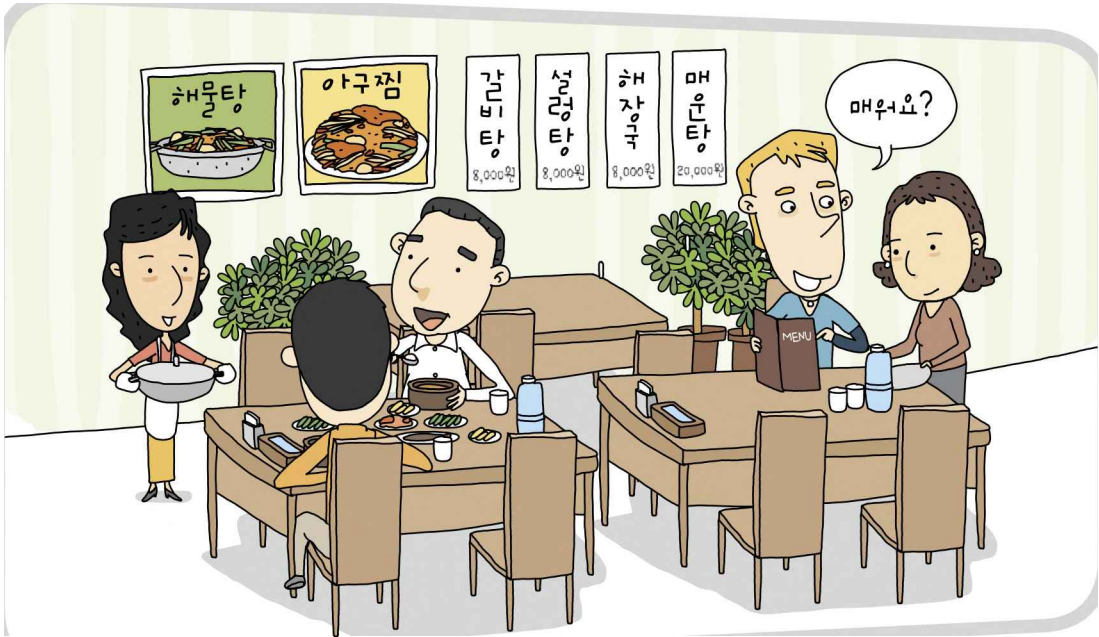
I can't eat spicy food.



# Conversation



track 079



직원 어서 오세요. 여기 앉으세요.

마크 영어 메뉴 있어요?

직원 죄송합니다. 영어 메뉴가 없어요.

마크 제가 매운 음식을 못 먹어요.  
안 매운 음식이 있어요?

직원 *(Pointing at the menu)* 이 음식이 안 매워요.

마크 이거 뭘로 만들어요?

직원 돼지고기하고 두부로 만들어요.

마크 그럼, 이거 하나 주세요.

Employee Welcome. Please take a seat over here.

Mark Do you have an English menu?

Employee Sorry. We do not have an English menu.

Mark I can't eat spicy food. Do you have any non-spicy food?

Employee *(Pointing at the menu)* This dish is not spicy.

Mark What is this made of?

Employee It is made with pork and tofu.

Mark Then, give me this one, please.

**New Vocabulary**

- 앉다 to sit
- 영어 English
- 메뉴 menu
- 제가 I
- 맵다 to be spicy
- 음식 food
- 못 cannot
- 안 not
- 월로 by means of what
- 만들다 to make, create
- 돼지고기 pork
- 두부 tofu
- (으)로 by means of

**New Expressions**

- 여기 앉으세요.  
Please take a seat over here.
- 죄송합니다. Sorry.
- 안 매운 음식이 있어요?  
Do you have any non-spicy food?
- 이거 월로 만들어요?  
What is this made of?
- 이거 하나 주세요. Give me this one, please.

**Close-Up**

**1 안 and 못**  
(Expressing negation)

Whereas 안 is used for negation (do not), 못 expresses the impossibility of a certain action. The place to use 안 and 못 is the same. 안 is used before verbs or adjectives, and 못 is used before verbs. However, in the case of the verb 하다, 안 and 못 are used between the noun and 하다.

- (Ex.) 저는 게임 안 해요.  
I don't play games.
- (Ex.) 요즘 잘 못 자요.  
I can't sleep these days.

**2 The marker (으)로**  
(Representing the material something is made of)

The marker (으)로 is also used with material or food ingredients. The marker (으)로 is used after a noun that pinpoints material or food ingredient. If the noun ends in a vowel or consonant ㄹ, ㄴ is combined, and if it ends in a consonant, 으로 is used.

- (Ex.) 이 음식은 김치로 만들었어요.  
This food is made with kimchi.
- (Ex.) 이 찌개는 생선으로 만들었어요.  
This stew is made with fish.

**Flashback**

**• Adjectives for describing tastes**

맵다 to be spicy	“매워요.” “It is spicy.”	매운 음식 spicy food	
달다 to be sweet	“달아요.” “It is sweet.”	단 음식 sweet food	
짜다 to be salty	“짜요.” “It is salty.”	짠 음식 salty food	
싱겁다 to be bland	“싱거워요.” “It's bland.”	싱거운 음식 bland food	
기름기가 많다 to be greasy	“기름기가 많아요.” “It is greasy.”	기름기가 많은 음식 greasy food	



## -(으)ㄴ The noun modifier

-(으)ㄴ is placed before a noun to modify the noun. -(으)ㄴ is also combined with adjective stems. When an adjective stem ends in a vowel, -ㄴ is added and, when it ends in a consonant, -은 is added. For example, when describing a large bag, add ㄴ after the stem 크 in the adjective 크다 as 큰 가방. When describing a small bag, add 은 after the stem 작 in the adjective 작다 as 작은 가방. If the adjective is OO있다/없다 (for example 맛있다, 재미없다), -는 is used between the adjective stems (for example 맛있는, 재미없는).

크다 → 크+ㄴ	큰 가방이 비싸요.	Big bags are expensive.
작다 → 작+은	어제 작은 우산을 샀어요.	I bought a small umbrella yesterday.
맛있다 → 맛있+는	맛있는 음식을 먹고 싶어요.	I want to eat delicious food.

When the stem of an adjective ends with ㄹ, such as 길다 (to be long), 멀다 (to be far), ㄹ is dropped, and -ㄴ is used as in 긴, 먼.

★ 길다 → 기+ㄹ+ㄴ	긴 머리가 불편해요.	Having long hair is uncomfortable.
--------------	-------------	------------------------------------

When the stem of an adjective ends with ㅂ, such as 맵다 (to be spicy), 춥다 (to be cold), ㅂ is changed to 우 and 은 is used as in 매운, 추운.

★ 맵다 → 매후+ㄴ	매운 음식을 잘 못 먹어요.	I cannot eat spicy food.
★ 춥다 → 추+우+은	추운 날씨 때문에 감기에 걸렸어요.	I caught the flu because of the cold weather.

# Quiz Yourself !

**1~4** Look at the picture and choose the correct answer.

1.



① 큰 가방    ② 작은 가방

2.



① 긴 머리    ② 짧은 머리

3.



① 맛있는 음식    ② 맛있는 음식

4.



① 더운 날씨    ② 추운 날씨

**5~7** Complete the conversation by using -(으)ㄴ.

Ex. A 어떤 음악을 좋아해요?

B 조용한 음악을 좋아해요.  
(조용하다)

5. A 왜 옷을 안 사요?

B 지금 돈이 없어서 \_\_\_\_\_ 옷을 살 수 없어요.  
(비싸다)

6. A 어떤 영화를 보고 싶어요?

B \_\_\_\_\_ 영화를 보고 싶어요.  
(재미있다)

7. A 한국 음식이 어때요?

B 맛있어요. 저는 \_\_\_\_\_ 음식을 좋아해요.  
(맵다)

Answer p.278

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 080

## -(으)ㄴ 것 을 별로 안 좋아해요

Talking about something you don't like

매운 것을 별로 안 좋아해요.

I don't like **spicy** things very much.

뜨거운 것을 별로 안 좋아해요.

I don't like **hot** stuff very much.

불편한 것을 별로 안 좋아해요.

I don't like **uncomfortable** things very much.

시끄러운 것을 별로 안 좋아해요.

I don't like **noisy** things very much.

## -(으)ㄴ 것 있어요?

Asking an employee

같은 것 있어요?

Do you have **the same** thing?

다른 것 있어요?

Do you have anything **else**?

안 매운 것 있어요?

Do you have anything **non-spicy**?

안 비싼 것 있어요?

Do you have anything **that isn't expensive**?

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to meals

- 밥 rice
- 국 soup
- 찌개 stew
- 반찬 side dish
- 숟가락 spoon
- 젓가락 chopsticks
- 개인 접시 (= 앞접시) individual plate





# Conversation Rehearsal



track 081

## 이 집에서 뭐가 제일 ...?

Asking for something specific

이 집에서 뭐가 제일 매워요?

What's the spiciest at this restaurant?

이 집에서 뭐가 제일 비싸요?

What's the most expensive dish at this restaurant?

이 집에서 뭐가 제일 맛있어요?

What's the tastiest dish at this restaurant?

이 집에서 뭐가 제일 인기가 많아요?

What's the most popular dish at this restaurant?

## (Noun) 빼고 주세요

Requesting for something to be removed

버섯 빼고 주세요.

Please, remove the mushrooms.

오이 빼고 주세요.

Please, remove the cucumber.

양파 빼고 주세요.

Please, remove the onion.

마늘 빼고 주세요.

Please, remove the garlic.

## Pronunciation Tip

### 못 먹어요 [문 머거요]

못 is pronounced as [물]. However, when the sound of the final consonant [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ] is followed by the initial consonant [ㅇ, ㄴ, ㄹ] respectively. In the above example, when the final consonant [ㄷ] in [물] is followed by the initial consonant [문] in the next syllable 먹, 못 [물] is pronounced as [문]. When the final consonant ㄱ in 먹 is followed by an initial syllable that is a vowel, it is pronounced as [머거요]. So 못 in 못 먹어요 is pronounced as [문머거요].

예 못 마셔요 [문 마셔요] 못 만나요 [문 만나요]



track 082



## Coffee Break

### Counting quantities of food

When counting quantities of food, it is important to use the proper words for quantities and units as in 한 개, 두 개. However, in real life, you can omit the unit and simply use the native Korean number. For example, if you want to order one bibimbap, you can say 비빔밥 하나 주세요. On the other hand, when ordering meat dishes like galbi or bulgogi, Sino-Korean numbers are used with the counting word 인분 (meaning the "amount that a person can eat"). For example, you can say 갈비 2(0)인분 주세요. (Please, serve two portions of ribs).

### ***Korean food culture: alone and together***

Koreans seldom go out to eat alone during lunch at school or work. In Korean restaurants, many people come in pairs. If you go in to eat alone, you may feel embarrassed. In Korea, the dining culture is not just for eating, but for making friends. Of course, eating together anywhere in the world means that you can spend more time with the other person, but in Korea, dining is an act of community building – it strengthens everyday human relationships. Therefore, there are many people who dine out or have a get-together at lunchtime in a group such as at work or school.

Of course, there are quite a few people who **혼식** (eating alone) due to the increasing number of single-person households these days. It is not uncommon for a restaurant to install a partition on the dining table for those who dine alone so that they can eat without worrying about the people next to them. Ironically, however, this partition installation more clearly reveals the psychology of Koreans who are uncomfortable eating alone.

Because of the eating culture of Korean people, you can discover some interesting facts when you go to a Korean restaurant. First, if you go to a Korean restaurant, there are side dishes that are provided free of charge. Traditionally, Korean food consists of rice and soup with side dishes around the main dish such as stew or broth. In fact, most Korean restaurant menus only list the main dishes. Moreover, even if you order additional side dishes from the owner after eating all the side dishes during a meal, most restaurants do not charge for refills.

In addition on the menu of Korean restaurants, meats such as bulgogi, ribs, and pork belly, or stews such as hotpot, are often sold in portions that can be eaten with other people, not for one person. In many cases, rather than a single portion, the amount of food is written on the menu of a restaurant as **대** (large), **중** (medium), **소** (small). If you are not familiar with Korean food, it is also a good idea to check how many servings there are when ordering at a Korean restaurant.



# Chapter 3

## Making appointments with friends in Korea

**Scene 09** Over the telephone

**Scene 10** On a video call

**Scene 11** At the meeting place

**Scene 12** At a café



샘 브라운 (영국)  
Sam Brown (United Kingdom)

# **Chapter 3**

**Making appointments with friends in Korea**

# Scene 09

Over the telephone

Making an appointment by phone

## 우리 같이 영화 볼까요?

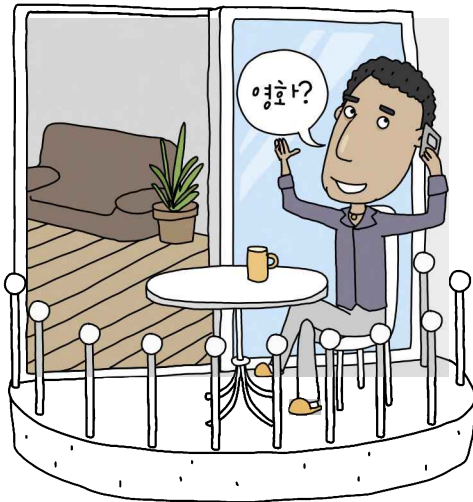
Do you want to see a movie together?



# Conversation



track 083



샘 여보세요. 유진 씨, 저 샘이에요.

유진 안녕하세요.

샘 내일 시간 있어요?

유진 네, 있어요. 왜요?

샘 우리 같이 영화 볼까요?

유진 좋아요. 같이 영화 봐요! 몇 시요?

샘 3시쯤 어때요?

유진 그래요. 그럼 내일 봐요.

샘 내일 만나요.

Sam Hello. Yujin, this is Sam.

Yujin Hi.

Sam Do you have time tomorrow?

Yujin Yes, I have time. Why?

Sam Do you want to see a movie together?

Yujin Sounds good. Let's watch a movie together! What time?

Sam How about 3 o'clock?

Yujin OK. See you tomorrow, then.

Sam See you tomorrow.

**New Vocabulary**

- 씨 Mr., Mrs., Ms., Miss
- 내일 tomorrow
- 시간 time
- 왜 why
- 우리 we, our, us
- 같이 together
- 영화 movie
- 좋다 to be good, fine
- 몇 시 what time
- 쯤 around
- 만나다 to meet
- 여보세요. Hello

**New Expressions**

- 좋아요. Sounds good.
- 3시쯤 어때요? How about 3 o'clock?
- 그래요. OK.
- 내일 봐요. See you tomorrow.
- 내일 만나요. See you tomorrow.  
(lit. I'll meet you tomorrow.)

**Close-Up**

**1 저 (이름)예요/이에요**

(Identifying yourself by phone)

When you meet someone in person and introduce yourself, you say, 저는 (이름)예요/이에요. However, when the caller identifies himself, he does not say 저는 and omits the 는, so he only refers to himself as 저 and says his name. It is natural to speak in such a way.

- (Ex.) A 여보세요. Hello?
- B 안녕하세요. 저 민수예요. Hello. I am Minsoo.

**2 우리 같이 -아/어요! and 어때요?**

(Suggesting a plan to do it together)

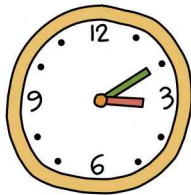
우리 같이 is a commonly used expression in daily life. For example, when Koreans propose to eat together, they say, 우리 같이 밥 먹어요 (Let's have a meal together). Alternatively, you can say 어때요 (How about...) to ask the other person. When the suggestion is a noun, write 어때요 after the noun, and when it is a verb, add -는 게 어때요 to the stem of the verb.

- (Ex.) A 우리 같이 점심 먹어요! Let's have lunch together!
- B 그래요. 비빔밥 어때요? Sure. How about bibimbap?
- (Ex.) A 좋아요. 우리 집에서 먹는 게 어때요?  
Sounds good. How about eating at my house?
- B 네, 좋아요. Yes. Sounds good.

**Flashback**

**• Reading the time**

When reading the time in Korean, hours are read using native Korean numbers, while minutes are read using Sino-Korean numbers.



3시	10분
세	십
native Korean number	Sino-Korean number



2시  
두



6시  
여섯



10시  
열



1시 10분  
한 십



4시 45분  
네 사십오



7시 30분  
일곱 삼십  
= 반 (half hour)



## -(으)까요? Shall we...?

-(으)까요 is used with a verb to suggest doing something together with someone. If the verb stem ends in a vowel, -까요 is used, and if the verb stem ends in a consonant, -을까요 is used. It is often used with the adverb 같이 (together). Since there is a question mark, raise the intonation slightly at end of the sentence when saying -(으)까요. Let's check the following examples to see how you can answer such propositions.

- |           |   |  |
|-----------|---|--|
| <b>보다</b> | <p><b>A</b> 같이 영화 볼까요?</p> <p><b>B</b> 좋아요. 같이 영화 봐요.<br/>미안해요. 시간이 없어요.</p>      | <p>Shall we go see a movie together?</p> <p>OK. Let's see a movie together.</p> <p>I'm sorry. I don't have time.</p> |
| <b>먹다</b> | <p><b>A</b> 같이 점심 먹을까요?</p> <p><b>B</b> 좋아요. 같이 점심 먹어요.<br/>미안해요. 다른 약속이 있어요.</p> | <p>Shall we have lunch together?</p> <p>OK. Let's have lunch.</p> <p>I'm sorry, I have another appointment.</p>      |

You can use -(으)까요 and 어때요 to suggest and coordinate alternative opinions as follows.

- |             |  |  |
|-------------|--|--|
| <b>만나다</b>  | <p><b>A</b> 몇 시에 만날까요?</p> <p><b>B</b> 3시 어때요?</p> <p><b>A</b> 좋아요. 3시에 만나요.</p> | <p>What time shall we meet?</p> <p>How's 3 o'clock?</p> <p>Sounds good, let's meet at 3 o'clock.</p> |
| <b>★ 걷다</b> | <p><b>A</b> 좀 걸을까요?</p> <p><b>B</b> 좋아요. 공원에 갈까요?</p> <p><b>A</b> 그럼시다.</p>      | <p>Shall we walk?</p> <p>Sounds good. Shall we go to the park?</p> <p>Let's do that.</p>             |



## Quiz Yourself !

**1~3** Complete the conversation by using -(으)니까요.

**Ex.** A 내일 같이 식사할까요 ?

B 좋아요. 같이 식사해요.

**1.** A 주말에 같이 영화를 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B 좋아요. 같이 영화를 봐요.

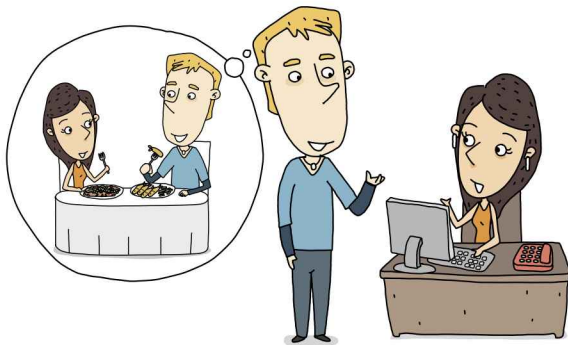
**2.** A 이따가 같이 커피를 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B 미안해요. 오늘 일이 많아요.  
그래서 같이 커피를 마실 수 없어요.

**3.** A 일요일에 같이 점심을 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B 미안해요. 다른 약속이 있어요.  
그래서 같이 점심을 먹을 수 없어요.

**4** Rearrange the conversation sentences.



㉠ 어디에서 볼까요?

㉡ 네, 시간 괜찮아요.

㉢ 지하철역에서 만나요.

㉣ 좋아요. 같이 식사해요.

㉤ 이번 주 토요일 12시에 시간 있어요?

㉥ 네, 좋아요. 그럼, 그때 만나요.

㉦ 그럼, 같이 식사할까요?



Answer p.278

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 084

## 우리 같이 -(으)니까요?

Making a proposal to another person

우리 같이 산책할까요?

Shall we take a walk together?

→ 좋아요. 같이 산책해요!

→ Sounds good. Let's go for a walk together!

우리 같이 밥 먹을까요?

Shall we eat together?

→ 그래요. 같이 밥 먹어요!

→ OK. Let's eat together!

우리 같이 커피 마실까요?

Shall we drink coffee together?

→ 그래요. 같이 커피 마셔요!

→ OK. Let's drink coffee together!

## 제가 -(으)니까요?

Asking another person's opinion

제가 밥을 살까요?

Shall I buy the meal?

제가 먼저 말할까요?

Shall I tell you first?

제가 표를 예매할까요?

Shall I book a ticket?

제가 친구들한테 연락할까요?

Shall I contact my friends?

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to appointments

날짜 date

시간 time

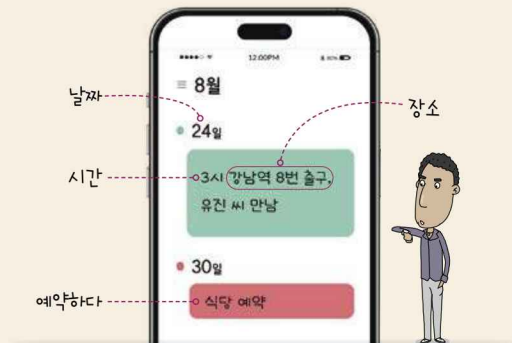
장소 place

약속하다 to make an appointment, promise

취소하다 to cancel

예약하다 to make a reservation

예매하다 to buy a ticket in advance



# Conversation Rehearsal



track 085

## (Noun) **괜찮아요?**

Asking another person's opinion

3시 **괜찮아요?**

Are you all right with 3 o'clock?

토요일 **괜찮아요?**

Are you all right with Saturday?

한국 음식 **괜찮아요?**

Are you all right with Korean food?

액션 영화 **괜찮아요?**

Are you all right with an action movie?

## **A 말고 B은/는 어때요?**

Presenting something else to another person

3시 **말고** 4시는 어때요?

How about 4 o'clock **instead of** 3 o'clock?

토요일 **말고** 일요일은 어때요?

How about Sunday **instead of** Saturday?

한국 음식 **말고** 중국 음식은 어때요?

How about Chinese food **instead of** Korean food?

액션 영화 **말고** 코미디 영화는 어때요?

How about a comedy movie **instead of** an action movie?

## **Pronunciation Tip**

**같이** [가치]

When the final consonant ㄷ, ㅁ is followed by the vowel ㅣ, the sound of ㄷ, ㅁ is changed to [ㅈ, ㅁ] respectively and moves to become the initial consonant of the next syllable. In the above example, the ㅁ of 같이 is changed to [ㅁ] before ㅣ and is pronounced as [가치] since it becomes the initial consonant of the next syllable.

**예** 해돋이 [해돋지] 발이 [바치]



track 086



## **Coffee Break**

### **Confirming an appointment**

When making an appointment over the phone, you often need to confirm the time, location, and related numbers. At this time, say what you want to double-check by asking **맞아요?**. Or, say **확인할게요** (I'll just confirm that) to indicate that you want to check first and then repeat the information to the listener. These phrases will reduce misunderstandings when making appointments.

### *Korean popular culture*



Korean popular culture such as K-pop, K-dramas, and K-movies in Korea is loved by many people around the world. The Korean wave, which started in Asia in the early 2000s, has spread internationally.

First, K-pop has emerged as the most loved field in the world. BTS, a representative Korean singer group, even reached number one on the

US Billboard Singles Chart. What is even more fascinating is that the K-pop songs sung by people around the world are Korean. K-pop is so popular that even foreigners who do not know Korean sing along to the lyrics in Korean. What is the enduring appeal of K-pop? Above all, Korean agencies play a big role in forming the best team to produce good music, making songs, and systematically training singers. In addition, the perfect group dance choreography and dynamic dancing skills of Korean idol singers, which can be said to be the trademarks of Korean K-pop, can be cited. This is possible because teenage boys and girls selected as trainees through fierce competition at a Korean agency devote their childhood practicing dance and song. It can be said that the fandom was formed thanks to their passion, persistence, and ability to pursue their dreams.

The Korean wave has blossomed from K-dramas and K-movies. Korean dramas, the protagonists of the Korean Wave in the early 2000s, are so popular that they dominate the top 10 list on Netflix Asia's charts, accounting for 60-70% of popularity. Korean dramas have secured a diverse fan base as the subject matter of Korean dramas has expanded with various themes and the popularity of dramas has increased the recognition of Korean actors. Recently, dramas adapted from popular webtoons are gaining popularity. In addition, Korean films are attracting attention as the director directly participates in the screenplay, directs the work in his own colors, and unfolds a distinct world of his/her own. Director Park Chan-wook, famous for <올드보이>, director Hong Sang-soo adored by the Cannes Film Festival, director Lee Chang-dong renowned for his literary films, and director Bong Joon-ho for <기생충>, which won Best Picture, Screenplay, and Best Film at the 2020 Academy Awards, are notable examples. Korean films that create their own unique cinematography are loved by many.



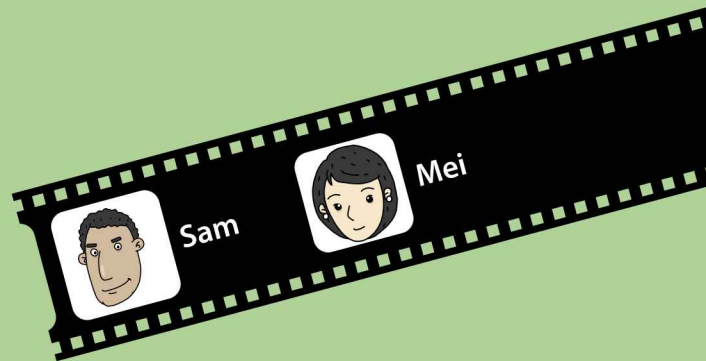
Scene **10**

On a video call

Inviting a friend

내일 친구들과하고  
영화를 보려고 해요.

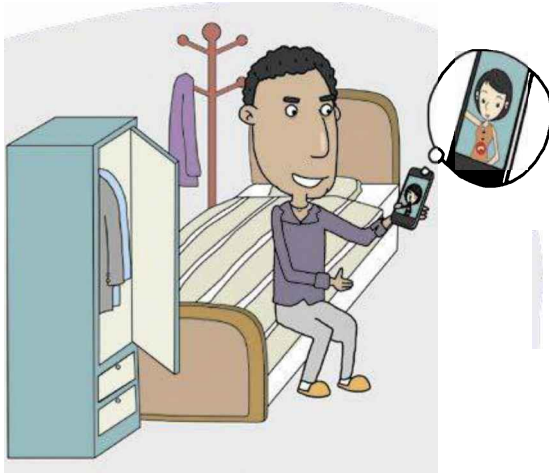
I'm going to see a movie with my friends tomorrow.



# Conversation



track 087



- 메이 여보세요.
- 샘 안녕하세요. 메이 씨, 지금 통화할 수 있어요?
- 메이 네, 괜찮아요.
- 샘 내일 친구들과하고 영화를 보려고 해요.  
같이 영화 봐요!
- 메이 좋아요. 그런데 무슨 영화를 볼 거예요?
- 샘 아직 안 정했어요.
- 메이 알겠어요. 내일 얘기해요!
- 샘 그럼, 내일 만나요. 끊을게요.

- Mei Hello.
- Sam Hello. Mei, are you available to talk now?
- Mei Yes, I'm good.
- Sam I'm going to see a movie with my friends tomorrow. Let's watch a movie together!
- Mei Sounds good. But which kind of movie are you going to watch?
- Sam We haven't decided yet.
- Mei Alright. Let's talk about it tomorrow!
- Sam See you tomorrow, then. Bye. (lit. I'm hanging up.)

## ▶ New Vocabulary

통화하다 to talk over the telephone

괜찮다 okay, alright, good

친구 friend

들 plural marker

그런데 but, however

무슨 which

정하다 to decide, determine

얘기하다 to say, tell, speak

끊다 to hang up

## ▶ New Expressions

지금 통화할 수 있어요?

Are you available to talk now?

괜찮아요.

I'm good.

아직 안 정했어요.

We haven't decided yet.

내일 얘기해요!

Let's talk about it tomorrow!

끊을게요.

Bye. (lit. I'm hanging up.)

## ▶ Close-Up

### 1 The marker 하고

(Expressing company)

The particle marker 하고 indicates doing something together with someone. Although the form is the same, the 하고 (with) learned in this Scene has a different meaning from the 하고 (and) learned in Scene 5. Add 하고 to the end of a noun that indicates something is with you. 하고 is used whether the noun ends in a vowel or a consonant. 하고 can be used interchangeably with the 와/과 used in written and formal forms, and (이)랑 in colloquial and informal forms.

(Ex.) 매일 친구하고 밥을 먹어요.

I eat **with** my friends every day.

(Ex.) 다음 주에 가족하고 여행할 거예요.

I'm going to travel **with** my family next week.

### 2 무슨

(Asking which one?)

무슨 is used before a noun to ask about the noun it modifies. It is mainly used for questions about the type of noun. In this conversation, to ask about the genre of the movie (comedy, action, romance, etc.), 무슨 영화 is asked. If you use the interrogative word 어느 to ask 어느 영화, it can imply choosing one of two or more movies.

(Ex.) A 무슨 음식을 좋아해요? Which food do you like?

B 저는 한국 음식을 좋아해요. I like Korean food.

(Ex.) A 어느 음식을 드시겠어요?

Which food would you like to eat?

B 저는 비빔밥을 먹을게요. I will eat bibimbap.

## Flashback

### • Vocabulary related to places

OO관 refers to a large building	OO장 refers to a type of place	OO실 refers to a type of room
영화관 movie theater	운동장 sports grounds	교실 classroom
미술관 art gallery	수영장 the pool	사무실 office
박물관 museum	행사장 event hall	휴게실 lounge



## -(으)려고 하다 be going to...

-(으)려고 하다 is used with a verb to indicate that the subject of a sentence intends to or has a will to do something. It is mainly used when describing the plan of one's will or the speaker's intention. Add -려고 하다 to the end of the verb stems ending in a vowel and -으려고 하다 to the end of a verb stem that ends in a consonant.

- 쉬다** 이번 주말에 저는 집에서 쉬려고 해요. This weekend I intend to rest at home.
- 찾다** 유진 씨는 졸업 후 일을 찾으려고 해요. Yujin intends to find work after graduating.
- 시작하다** A 마크 씨, 한국어 공부가 끝나면 뭐 하려고 해요?  
Mark, what do you plan to do after you complete studying Korean?  
B 저는 한국에서 일을 시작하려고 해요. I intend to start working in Korea.
- 피우다** 이제부터 담배를 피우지 않으려고 해요. I intend to stop smoking from now on.
- ★ 걷다** 건강을 위해서 매일 30분씩 걸으려고 해요.  
I intend to walk for 30 minutes every day for my health.
- ★ 살다** 저는 이 집에서 계속 살려고 해요. I intend to continue living in this house.

In order to express an intention of the past, the past tense marker -았/었- is combined with the 하다 of -(으)려고 하다 as -(으)려고 했다.

- 말하다** 어제 말하려고 했어요. 그런데 말 못 했어요.  
I was going to tell you yesterday. But I couldn't speak.
- 배우다** 전에 수잔 씨가 한국 요리를 배우려고 했어요. 그런데 시간이 없어서 못 했어요.  
Before, Susan intended to learn Korean cooking. But she couldn't because she didn't have time.

### ! Be careful!

While -(으)ㄹ 거예요 describes the subject's schedule objectively, -(으)려고 하다 describes the plan according to the subject's intent. If the subject of the sentence is not a person, -(으)ㄹ 거예요 is interpreted as a description of the schedule. However, in the case of -(으)려고 하다, it cannot be interpreted as the subject's intent and is interpreted instead as something that is going to occur.

- (Ex) 저는 이번 주말에 여행 갈 거예요. I am going on a trip this weekend.  
저는 이번 주말에 여행 가려고 해요. I intend to go on a trip this weekend.
- (Ex) 곧 졸업식이 시작할 거예요. The graduation ceremony will start soon.  
곧 졸업식이 시작하려고 해요. The graduation ceremony is going to start soon.



## Quiz Yourself !

**1~5** Complete the sentence by choosing the correct answer.

- 이번 달에 돈을 너무 많이 썼어요. 그래서 앞으로 돈을 많이 ① 쓰려고 해요.  
② 쓰지 않으려고 해요.
- 매일 늦게 일어나서 늦어요. 내일부터 일찍 자고 일찍 ① 일어나려고 해요.  
② 일어나지 않으려고 해요.
- 담배를 피워서 건강이 나빠졌어요. 이제부터 담배를 ① 피우려고 해요.  
② 피우지 않으려고 해요.
- 이제부터 책을 ① 읽으려고 해요. 그래서 오늘 서점에서 책을 많이 샀어요.  
② 읽지 않으려고 해요.
- 어제 한국 음식을 ① 만들려고 해요. 그런데 시간이 없어서 못 만들었어요.  
② 만들려고 했어요.

**6~9** Complete the conversation by using -(으)려고 하다.

- A 수업 후에 뭐 할 거예요?  
B 친구하고 밥을 \_\_\_\_\_.  
(먹다)
- A 휴가 때 뭐 할 거예요?  
B 혼자 제주도에 여행 \_\_\_\_\_.  
(가다)
- A 이번 주말에 뭐 하려고 해요?  
B 그냥 집에 \_\_\_\_\_.  
(있다)
- A 앞으로 어떻게 말하기를 연습하려고 해요?  
B 한국 친구를 \_\_\_\_\_.  
(찾다)

Answer p.278

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 088

## (time)부터 -(으)려고 해요

Talking about your plans

오늘부터 다이어트하려고 해요.

I'm going to start dieting from today.

오늘부터 게임을 안 하려고 해요.

I'm not going to play games starting from today.

내일부터 운동을 시작하려고 해요.

I'm going to start exercising from tomorrow.

내일부터 영어로 말하지 않으려고 해요.

I'm going to try not speak English from tomorrow.

## -(으)ㄹ 거예요?

Asking about another person's plans

어떻게 집에 갈 거예요?

How are you going home?

이번 주말에 뭐 할 거예요?

What are you going to do this weekend?

어디에서 친구를 만날 거예요?

Where will you meet your friends?

언제 한국어 공부를 시작할 거예요?

When will you start studying Korean?

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to calling on the phone

전화를 걸다 to make a call

전화를 받다 to pick up (the phone)

통화하다 to talk over the telephone

전화를 끊다 to hang up (the phone)

문자 메시지를 보내다 to send a text (message)

문자 메시지를 받다 to receive a text (message)

영상 통화하다 to make a video call



전화를 걸다



영상 통화하다

# Conversation Rehearsal



track 089

## -(으)면 어때요?

Making a proposal to another person

좀 걸으면 어때요?

How about a walk?

같이 식사하면 어때요?

How about eating together?

내일 일찍 만나면 어때요?

How about meeting early tomorrow?

다른 친구도 부르면 어때요?

How about calling another friend too?

## -아/어 줘서 고마워요

Expressing thanks

전화해 줘서 고마워요.

Thanks for your call.

걱정해 줘서 고마워요.

Thanks for your concern.

얘기 들어 줘서 고마워요.

Thanks for listening to me.

그렇게 말해 줘서 고마워요.

Thanks for saying that.

## Pronunciation Tip

### 괜찮아요 [괜차나요]

When an ending that starts with a vowel comes after the double consonant ㅌ or ㅍ, the sound of the second final consonant ㅅ of ㅌ, ㅍ is dropped. Thus, the first consonant ㄷ, ㅍ of the double final consonant ㅌ or ㅍ moves to the initial consonant of the next syllable and is pronounced respectively. In the above example, 괜찮아요, the ㅅ of ㅌ in ㅌㅅ is dropped and the ㄷ moves to the initial sound of the last syllable in the next syllable and is pronounced as [괜차나요].

예) 끊어요 [끄너요]    않아요 [아라요]



track 090



## Coffee Break

### How to say goodbye when ending a phone call

Say 안녕히 계세요 when you hang up on the phone with someone of the same age who you are in a more formal relationship with (for example, a business partner). When you hang up the phone with someone who is of similar age or someone you have a close relationship with (for example, a school friend), say 끊을게요 or 끊어요 to give a sense of closeness and friendliness. If you hang up the phone with the person you need to talk to (for example, a boss, friend's parents, etc.) in the most polite way possible, say 들어가세요.

### Special foods on special occasions

There are traditional foods to eat during the Korean holidays. Rice cake soup is consumed on New Year's Day and *songpyeon* on *Chuseok*. In addition to these holiday foods, there are foods that come to mind at specific moments of our daily life.

#### Seaweed soup on birthdays

In Korea, you always eat seaweed soup on your birthday. Older adults often ask young people on their birthdays, “Have you eaten seaweed soup?”. Seaweed soup is rich in nutrients and eaten by mothers after childbirth. This custom is said to have originated in the past when seaweed soup was placed on the table to pray for a baby.



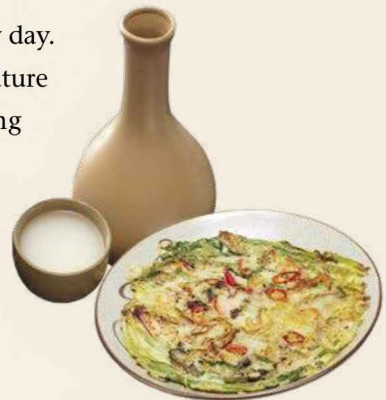
#### Korean taffy or sticky rice cake before an examination

Koreans give taffy or sticky rice cakes with a strong “sticky” feeling to those who hope to “pass” an exam. Eating taffy or sticky rice cake is like giving a present of good luck. It’s easy to find taffy and sticky rice cakes sold here and there in the city ahead of Korea’s national university entrance exam in mid-

November. It is worth noting that Koreans do not eat seaweed soup before a major test. The “slippery” feeling of seaweed soup is reminiscent of slipping and failing to pass a test.

#### Pajeon and makgeolli on a rainy day

Many Koreans think of makgeolli and pajeon on a rainy day. Some explain that high-calorie foods raise the body temperature on a rainy day, while others say that it is because hearing rain reminds them of the sound of frying *pajeon* in oil. For whatever reason, there are many restaurants that sell *pajeon* on rainy days. *Makgeolli* is an alcoholic rice drink that goes well with *pajeon*. Of course, you can drink beer or soju with *pajeon*, but on a rainy day, the tradition of eating *pajeon* with *makgeolli* is iconic.



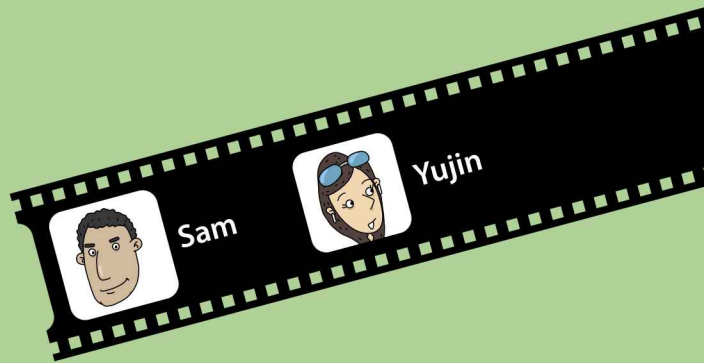
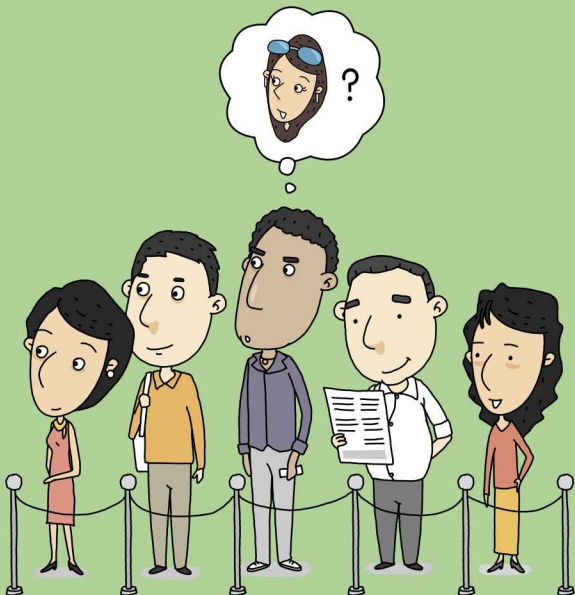
Scene **11**

**At the meeting place**

Changing the meeting place

사람이 많아서  
유진 씨가 안 보여요.

I can't see you, Yujin, because there are too many people here.



# Conversation



track 091



샘 여보세요. 유진 씨, 지금 어디에 있어요?

유진 저는 홍대입구역에 있어요.

샘 몇 번 출구에 있어요?

유진 9번 출구에 있어요.

샘 그런데 여기에 사람이 많아서 유진 씨가 안 보여요.

유진 그래요? 그럼, 역 근처 공원 알아요?

샘 네, 알아요.

유진 그럼, 거기에서 봐요.

샘 알겠어요. 지금 갈게요.

Sam Hello. Yujin, where are you now?

Yujin I'm at Hongik University Station.

Sam Which number exit are you at?

Yujin I am at exit number 9.

Sam I can't see you, Yujin, because there are too many people here.

Yujin Really? Then do you know the park near the station?

Sam Yes, I know it.

Yujin Then let's meet there.

Sam OK, I'll go there now.

**New Vocabulary**

- 어디에 where
- 홍대입구역 Hongik University Station
- 출구 exit
- 사람 people
- 많다 to be a lot
- 역 station
- 근처 near (in the vicinity of)
- 공원 park
- 알다 to know
- 거기 there

**New Expressions**

- 지금 어디에 있어요?  
Where are you now?
- 몇 번 출구에 있어요?  
Which number exit are you at?
- ... 알아요? Do you know...?
- 거기에서 봐요.  
Let's meet there.
- 지금 갈게요.  
I'll go there now.

**Close-Up**

**1 여기/거기/저기**

(Here/there/over there)

여기 refers to a place close to the speaker, and 저기 refers to a place away from both the speaker and the listener. 거기 refers to a place far from the speaker but close to the listener. Also, 거기 refers to a place referred to in the conversation which cannot be seen at the moment from the view of the person you are conversing with.

- (Ex.) 여기에 핸드폰이 있어요. There is a phone **here**.
- (Ex.) 부산에 갔어요. 거기 날씨가 좋았어요.  
I went to Busan. The weather **there** was nice.
- (Ex.) 시계가 저기에 있어요. There is a watch **over there**.

**2 역 근처 공원**

(From large units to small units)

Unlike in English, in Korean, when referring to a specific place or time, units are written from large to small units. In this conversation, 역 근처 공원 refers to a large area near the station, specifically the park in the middle. In fact, even when writing addresses in Korea, they are written from large to small units. Time is also described from large to small units. For example, when making an appointment, say the date first, like "the 10th at 3 pm", then the time zone and the specific time.

- (Ex.) 다음 주 화요일 오후 6시에 학교 근처 카페에서 만나요.  
See you next Tuesday at 6 pm at the **cafe near the school**.

**Flashback**

**Frequently used conjunctions**

그리고 And	날씨가 좋아요. 그리고 사람들이 친절해요. The weather is nice. <b>And</b> the people are friendly.
그런데, 하지만 But	한국어 공부가 재미있어요. 그런데 좀 어려워요. Studying Korean is fun. <b>But</b> it's a little difficult.
그래도 Even so	많이 먹었어요. 그래도 배가 고파요. I ate a lot. <b>Even so</b> , I'm still hungry.
그래서 So, therefore	배가 아파요. 그래서 병원에 가요. My stomach hurts. <b>So, therefore</b> I'm going to the hospital.
그러니까 So, therefore	비가 와요. 그러니까 우산을 가지고 가세요. It's raining. <b>So</b> bring an umbrella.
그러면 (= 그럼) Then	한국어를 잘하고 싶어요? 그러면 한국 친구하고 많이 얘기하세요. Do you want to speak Korean well? <b>Then</b> speak a lot with your Korean friends.
왜냐하면 Because	오후에 시간이 없어요. 왜냐하면 오후에 아르바이트해요. I don't have time in the afternoon. <b>Because</b> I work part-time in the afternoon.



## -아/어서 because

-아/어서 is used to indicate the cause or reason for something. -아/어서 is a grammar form that connects two sentences indicating cause/reason and effect into one sentence with the connecting adverb 그래서. In Korean, unlike in English, the clause indicating the reason for the combination of -아/어서 is always written before the result. -아/어서 is combined with verbs and adjectives. The verb 하다 is used as 해서. -아서 is used when the stem ends with a vowel ㅏ or ㅑ and -어서 is used with all other stem endings.

- 유명하다** 김치가 유명**해서** 김치를 살 거예요. Since kimchi is famous, I will buy kimchi.
- 바쁘다** 요즘 일이 바빠**서** 시간이 없어요.  
I don't have time because I'm busy at work nowadays.
- 있다** 한국 친구가 있**어서** 한국어를 배워요.  
I am learning the Korean language because I have a Korean friend.
- 가다** 다음 주에 여행 가**서** 여행 가방을 사요.  
I'm buying a travel bag because I'm traveling next week.
- 만나다** 친구를 만나**서** 기분이 너무 좋아요.  
I'm in a good mood because I'm going to meet my friend.
- ★ 덥다** 날씨가 더워**서** 힘이 없어요. Because of the hot weather, I'm exhausted.

Even though the cause or reason lies in the past, verbs or adjectives in the past tense cannot be used with -아/어서. The present tense verb or adjective form should be used with -아/어서 regardless of whether the sentence is in the past tense or the present tense.

- 아프다** 어제 아파**서** 친구를 만날 수 없었어요. (O)  
Yesterday I was sick and could not see my friend.
- 어제 아팠**어서** 친구를 만날 수 없었어요. (X)

### ! Be careful!

-아/어서 cannot be used when making a command with -(으)세요 and when proposing an action with -(으)십시오. Therefore, when talking about the reasons for the command and the proposition, use -(으)니까 instead of -아/어서.

- (Ex) 날씨가 좋아**서** 산책합니다. (X)  
날씨가 좋**으니까** 산책합니다. (O) The weather is nice, so let's go for a walk.



## Quiz Yourself !

**1~4** Connect the first half and second half of the sentence with -아/어서.

**Ex.** 친구가 바빠요. 그래서 시간이 없어요.

→ 바빠서

1. 한국 사람이 친절해요. 그래서 저를 많이 도와줬어요.

→

2. 한국어를 잘 몰라요. 그래서 길을 잃어버렸어요.

→

3. 어제 배가 아팠어요. 그래서 병원에 갔어요.

→

4. 아까 많이 먹었어요. 그래서 지금 배가 불러요.

→

**5~7** Complete the conversation by using -아/어서.

**Ex.** A 왜 피곤해요?

B 일이 많아서 피곤해요.  
(일이 많다)

5. A 왜 일찍 자요?

B \_\_\_\_\_ 일찍 자요.  
(내일 아침에 약속이 있다)

6. A 왜 한국어를 공부해요?

B \_\_\_\_\_ 공부해요.  
(한국 사람하고 말하고 싶다)

7. A 왜 어제 전화를 안 받았어요?

B \_\_\_\_\_ 전화 못 받았어요.  
(핸드폰이 고장 나다)

Answer p.278

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 092

## -아/어서 -(으)ㄴ 수 없어요

Making excuses

바빠서 만날 수 없어요.

I can't meet you because I'm busy.

피곤해서 운동할 수 없어요.

I can't exercise because I'm tired.

시간이 없어서 만날 수 없어요.

I can't meet you because I don't have time.

돈이 없어서 옷을 살 수 없어요.

I can't buy clothes because I don't have money.

## -아/어서 안 돼요

Making a negative comment

비싸서 안 돼요.

I can't buy it because it's expensive.

머리가 아파서 안 돼요.

I can't because my head hurts.

시간이 없어서 안 돼요.

I can't meet you because I don't have time.

날씨가 나빠서 안 돼요.

I can't go because the weather is bad.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Work as an excuse

바빠요. I am busy.

일이 많아요. I have a lot of work.

시간이 없어요. I don't have time.

### • Health as an excuse

머리가 아파요. I have a headache.

몸이 안 좋아요. I'm not feeling well.

감기에 걸렸어요. I caught a cold.

### • Transportation as an excuse

길이 막혀요. The road is blocked.

교통이 복잡해요. There is heavy traffic.

길에 차가 많아요. There are many vehicles on the road.



# Conversation Rehearsal



track 093

## (place) 어디에 ... ?

Asking for a specific location

학교 어디에 있어요?

→ 학교 정문 앞에 있어요.

Where at school are you?

→ I'm at the main entrance of the school.

지하철역 어디에 있어요?

→ 지하철역 2번 출구에 있어요.

Where at the subway station are you?

→ I'm at exit 2 of the subway station.

서울 어디에 살아요?

→ 서울 강남에 살아요.

Where in Seoul do you live?

→ I live in Gangnam, Seoul.

## (situation) 제가 다시 전화할게요

Hanging up the phone

다른 전화가 와요. 제가 다시 전화할게요.

There is another incoming call. I'll call you back.

배터리가 다 됐어요. 제가 다시 전화할게요.

The battery is about to die. I'll call you back.

소리가 잘 안 들려요. 제가 다시 전화할게요.

I can't hear well. I'll call you back.

이제 끊어야겠어요. 제가 다시 전화할게요.

I have to hang up now. I'll call you back.

## Pronunciation Tip

### 영화 [영화]

When consonants ㄴ, ㅇ, ㄹ, ㄷ are connected with ㅎ, the ㅎ is pronounced weakly. In the above example, the ㅎ following the consonant ㅇ of 영 is weakened and pronounced as [영화], but it is actually heard as [영와] because ㅎ is weakened to the extent that it is hardly audible.

예 전화 [전화] 운동화 [운동화]



track 094



## Coffee Break

### When you can't hear well on the phone

If you can't hear the other person well while talking on the phone, say 잘 안 들려요. The other person will speak in a louder voice. Of course, you can also directly ask the other person to speak more loudly by saying 더 크게 말해 주세요. Alternatively, you can simply say 네? as an indirect way of asking the other person to repeat himself.

### Street food in Korea

Foreigners are shocked when they come to Seoul as the prices of goods are higher than they thought. In particular, the price of coffee, which is higher than the price of rice at a restaurant is a notable example. However, Korean food is not limited to expensive Korean cuisine, so-called *hanjeongsik*, which provides pleasure to both the tastebuds and visuals, but also a variety of street food stalls.

#### Tteokbokki

*Tteokbokki* is one of Korea's representative street foods as it is a food people enjoy casually at street food stalls and cheap eateries. It is a dish made by boiling red pepper paste in water, cutting rice cakes into easy-to-bite pieces, and simmering them with various vegetables. It is also very easy to make. *Tteokbokki* is a popular dish enjoyed for



its spicy taste among students in the 10s-20s range, young women, and young people alike. What is interesting is that *tteokbokki*, the common food for anyone, was once considered a royal food that was listed on the King's royal table in the past. It is said that in the past, royal *tteokbokki* used soy sauce instead of red pepper paste, so the color of the food was not red, and the ingredients were not in the form of rice cakes and vegetables, but in the form of a hotpot with finely chopped meat and mushrooms.

#### Bungeoppang

*Bungeoppang* is a snack that can be easily seen on the street when the cold wind starts to blow. It is made by kneading flour thinly, putting the batter in a mold with the same shape on both sides, and placing red bean paste in the middle and baking it. People call it *bungeoppang* because the baking frame is shaped like and looks like a carp when it finishes



baking. Koreans enjoy eating *bungeoppang* in cold weather because it is crispy on the outside and hot red beans are found inside. Because the frame of *bungeoppang* is made with the same frame on the left and right, Koreans sometimes refer to “father-son” who resemble each other as “*bungeoppang*”.

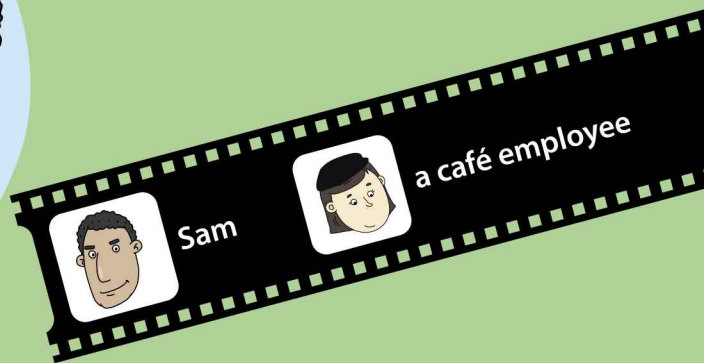
Scene **12**

At a café

Ordering coffee

죄송합니다.  
지금 빵이 없습니다.

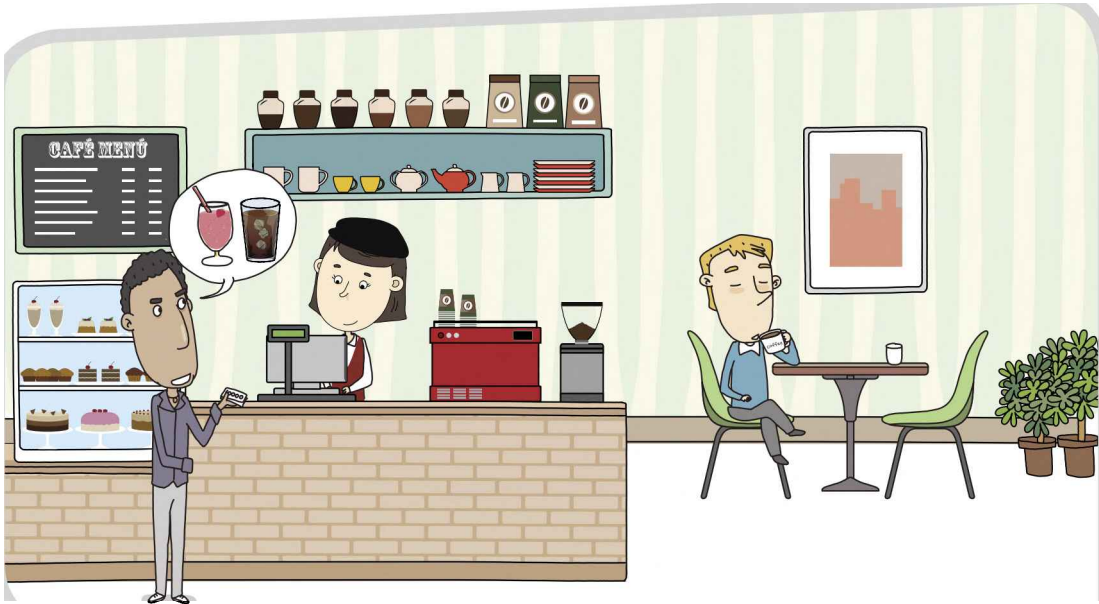
Sorry. There is no bread right now.



# Conversation



track 095



직원 어서 오세요.

샘 아이스 커피 한 잔하고 딸기 주스 두 잔 주세요.

직원 알겠습니다. 또 필요한 거 없으세요?

샘 그리고 빵도 세 개 주세요.

직원 죄송합니다. 지금 빵이 없습니다.

샘 그래요? 그럼, 커피하고 주스만 주세요.

직원 네, 전부 15,000원입니다.

샘 여기 있어요.

Employee Come in.

Sam I would like one ice coffee and two strawberry juices, please.

Employee Alright. Is there anything else you need?

Sam Three slices of bread too, please.

Employee Sorry. There is no bread right now.

Sam Really? Then, just the coffee and juice, please.

Employee Alright, the total is 15,000 won.

Sam Here you go.

▶ **New Vocabulary**

- 커피 coffee
- 아이스 커피 ice coffee
- 잔 cup
- 딸기 strawberry
- 주스 juice
- 또 as well, too, also
- 필요하다 to be needed, necessary
- 거 thing
- 그리고 also, and
- 빵 bread
- 도 also, too
- 개 counter word for general things
- 만 only
- 전부 all
- 원 won

▶ **New Expressions**

- 또 필요한 거 없으세요?  
Is there anything else you need?
- 그리고 빵도 세 개 주세요.  
Three slices of bread too, please.
- 커피하고 주스만 주세요.  
Just the coffee and juice, please.
- 전부 15,000원입니다.  
The total is 15,000 won.

▶ **Close-Up**

① **하고 and 그리고**  
(Adding)

Both 하고 and 그리고 have meanings that correspond to the English “and”, but the conjugation conditions of 하고 and 그리고 differ. When connecting more than two nouns, add 하고 to the end of the first noun. When connecting sentences, add 그리고 to the end of the first sentence after the punctuation mark.

- Ⓧ 저는 불고기하고 김치를 좋아해요.  
I like bulgogi and kimchi.
- Ⓧ 비빔밥이 싸요, 그리고 맛있어요.  
Bibimbap is cheap. And, it’s delicious.

② **Markers 도 and 만**  
(Expressing “more” and “only”)

The markers 만 and 도 add special meaning and emphasis to the noun. The marker 도 means “also, too”. The marker 만 means “only, just”. When the markers 도 and 만 are combined with subject marker 이/가 or the object marker 을/를, the subject marker and object marker are omitted and only the marker 도 and 만 are used. However, when 도 and 만 are combined with markers that are not the subject and object markers, the other markers are neither dropped nor omitted.

- Ⓧ 아침을 안 먹었어요, 점심도 안 먹었어요.  
I didn’t eat breakfast. I didn’t even eat lunch.
- Ⓧ 제가 고기하고 채소를 좋아해요. 그런데 생선만 안 좋아해요.  
I like meat and vegetables. But I only don’t like fish.

**Flashback**

• **Counting words**

When counting things, native Korean numbers are used with a special counting word. The counting word changes depending on the noun that is being counted. Unlike English, you put the noun first, then a native Korean number, followed by an appropriate counting word. For example, 모자 한 개 (for one hat) and 사람 두 명 (for two people).

						
one	한 개	한 명	한 분	한 잔	한 권	한 장
two	두 개	두 명	두 분	두 잔	두 권	두 장
three	세 개	세 명	세 분	세 잔	세 권	세 장
many	여러 개	여러 명	여러 분	여러 잔	여러 권	여러 장



## The formal form **-(스)버니다**

In Korean, changing the nuance of a sentence and showing the appropriate formality is done by changing the sentence endings. The ending form **-(스)버니다** has a formal and official sound to it, but it is used to treat others more formally. For example, it is often used when dealing with a person in a business relationship, when speaking to your boss at work, or when public speaking. You've probably heard of **-(스)버니다** from employees in uniforms at the department store or flight attendants during a flight. The formal form **-(스)버니다** is different from the ending form **-아/어요**. **-아/어요** is mostly used in casual or friendly situations like conversations with juniors or seniors at school or local shopkeepers. The formal form **-(스)버니다** is used with verbs and adjectives. When the stem of a verb or an adjective ends in a vowel, **-버니다** is used, and when the stem of an adjective ends in a consonant, **-습니다** is used.

하다	이제 회의가 시작 <b>합니다</b> .	The meeting will begin now.
춥다	요즘 날씨가 <b>춥습니다</b> .	The weather is cold nowadays.
이다	저는 미국 사람 <b>입니다</b> .	I'm American.

To make the past tense pattern, combine **-았/었-** with **-(스)버니다** to the end of a verb or adjective stem.

일하다	어제 아침부터 <b>일했습니다</b> .	I've been working since yesterday morning.
찾다	조금 전에 동료가 서류를 <b>찾았습니다</b> .	A colleague found the documents a little while ago.

When asking a question using the formal form, add **-(스)버니까** to the end of a verb or adjective stem instead of **-(스)버니다**.

어떨다	A 회사 생활이 어떻 <b>습니까</b> ?	How is your work life?
재미있다	B 재미있 <b>습니다</b> .	It is enjoyable.
끝나다	A 회의가 언제 끝났 <b>습니까</b> ?	When did the meeting end?
	B 조금 전에 끝났 <b>습니다</b> .	It ended a little while ago.



## Quiz Yourself !

**1~5** Change the underlined part into the formal form -(스)ㅂ니다, as shown in the example.

**Ex.** 저는 한국 영화를 정말 좋아해요. → 좋아합니다

1. 그래서 주말에 친구하고 영화를 봐요. →
2. 영화가 끝나면 같이 점심을 먹어요. →
3. 가끔 커피도 마셔요. →
4. 지난주에도 영화를 봤어요. →
5. 정말 재미있었어요. →

**6~8** Complete the conversation by using -(스)ㅂ니다.

**Ex.** A 이름이 무엇입니까?  
B 저는 마크입니다.



6. A 어느 나라에서 왔습니까?  
B 미국에서 \_\_\_\_\_.
7. A 지금 무슨 일을 합니까?  
B 은행에서 \_\_\_\_\_.
8. A 언제 일을 시작하셨습니까?  
B 6개월 전에 \_\_\_\_\_.

Answer p.278

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 096

## 하나도 (negative expression)

Using negative expressions

빵이 하나도 없습니다.

There isn't a **single** piece of bread.

돈이 하나도 없습니다.

I don't have **any** money.

모자가 한 개도 없습니다.

There isn't a **single** hat.

학생이 한 명도 없습니다.

There isn't a **single** student.

## 뭐든지/누구든지/언제든지/어디든지

Speaking with emphasis

뭐든지 다 있습니다.

We have **everything**.

누구든지 올 수 있습니다.

**Anyone** can come.

언제든지 살 수 있습니다.

You can buy it **anytime**.

어디든지 갈 수 있습니다.

You can go **anywhere**.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to stores

문을 열다 to open the store

문을 닫다 to close the store

주문하다 to order

계산하다 to pay

줄을 서다 to line up

영수증 receipt



# Conversation Rehearsal



track 097

## (Noun) 드릴까요?

Asking about the other person's intentions

영수증 드릴까요?

→ 아니요, 괜찮아요.

뭐 드릴까요?

→ 샌드위치 주세요.

몇 개 드릴까요?

→ 두 개 주세요.

Would you like a receipt?

→ No, I'm fine.

What would you like?

→ A sandwich, please.

How many would you like?

→ Please, give me two.

## 따로 (-아/어) 주세요

Requesting something additional to a worker

얼음을 따로 주세요.

Please, set **aside** the ice.

설탕을 따로 주세요.

Please, set **aside** the sugar.

따로 계산해 주세요.

Please, pay it **separately**.

따로 포장해 주세요.

Please, pack it **separately**.

## Pronunciation Tip

없어요 [업싸요]

When the double final consonant is followed by a vowel, only the second part of the double final consonant is moved to be the initial consonant of the next syllable. However, when the double final consonant that begins with [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ] is followed by ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ the double final consonant is pronounced as [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ]. In the above example, the second consonant ㅅ in 없 is moved to become the initial consonant of the next syllable and is pronounced as [ㅅ] because the first part of the double consonant in 없 is [ㅂ]. Therefore, 없어요 is pronounced as [업싸요].



track 098



### Some expressions to say to store employees

When you want to take out a drink or food item from a store, you can say 가져갈 거예요 or 테이크아웃 (take-out)할 거예요. If you eat some of the food and there are leftovers, you can tell an employee 싸 주세요 or 포장해 주세요.

### *Scenery from a Korean cafe*



If you go to cafes in Korea, you can see people drinking coffee and chatting with others, but it is also common to see people studying or typing away on their laptops. Coffee in Korea is not cheap, but even college students often use cafes instead of libraries to read or study. Some people say that cafes are better than libraries when it comes to focusing, while others prefer a pleasant cafe instead of their home.

Foreigners are surprised how Koreans leave their laptops on the table while using the café toilet. Some Koreans even leave their expensive laptops and cell phones on their seats for more than 30 minutes without asking others to look after their devices. What is even more surprising to foreigners is that no one steals an unoccupied laptop or cell phone. Koreans think that if there is a laptop, cell phone, outerwear, or bag on the table in a café, someone is using it. Thus, no one touches it or cares about it.



Some suggest that Koreans are accustomed to crime prevention due to Korea's world-class security. While others suggest that most café customers, who are from the young generation, have grown up with the attention of their parents from a young age, so they do not care about other people's belongings. At any rate, an important thing to note is that you don't have to carry your belongings to the toilet when you go to a café in Korea.

# Chapter 4

Adapting to life in Korea

**Scene 13** At an electronics store

**Scene 14** At a beauty salon

**Scene 15** At a gym

**Scene 16** At the post office



수잔 피터스 (호주)  
Susan Peters (Australia)

# **Chapter 4**

**Adapting to life in Korea**

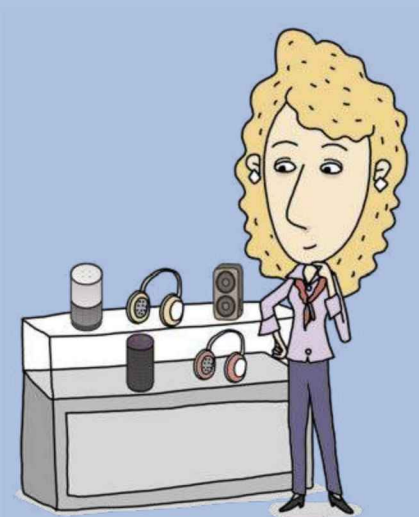
Scene **13**

**At an electronics store**

Comparing electronics

더 싼 거 있어요?

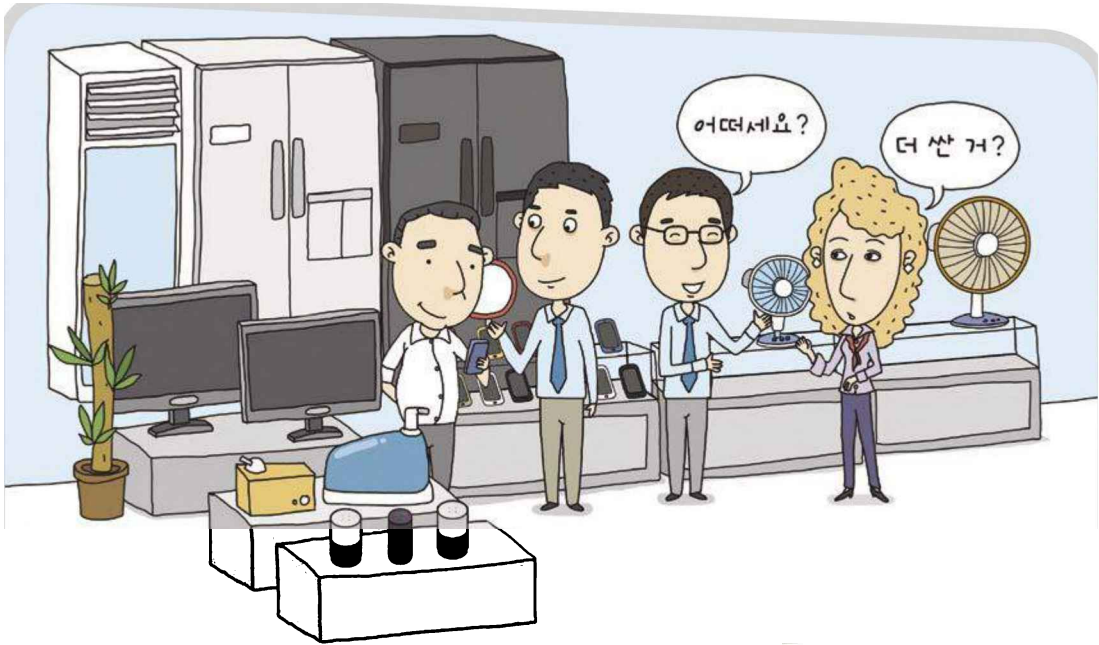
Is there anything cheaper?



# Conversation



track 099



- 수잔 선풍기 좀 보여 주세요.
- 직원 이거 어때요?
- 수잔 다른 디자인 없어요?
- 직원 그럼, 이거 어때요?  
이 디자인이 인기가 많아요.
- 수잔 좀 비싸요. 더 싼 거 있어요?
- 직원 여기 있어요. 이게 제일 싼 거예요.
- 수잔 그래요? 좀 더 보고 올게요.

- Susan Could you show me some fans?
- Employee How about this one?
- Susan Is there a different design?
- Employee Then what about this one?  
This design is very popular.
- Susan It's a little expensive. Is there anything cheaper?
- Employee Here you go. This is the cheapest.
- Susan Really? I'll go look around a bit more.



**New Vocabulary**

- 선풍기 fan
- 다르다 to be different
- 디자인 design
- 인기가 많다 to be popular
- 비싸다 to be expensive
- 더 more
- 좀 a bit, a little
- 싸다 to be cheap
- 제일 (the) most
- 오다 to come

**New Expressions**

- ... 좀 보여 주세요. Could you show me...
- 이거 어때요? How about this one?
- 다른 디자인 없어요?  
Is there a different design?
- 이 디자인이 인기가 많아요.  
This design is very popular.
- 좀 비싸요. It's a little expensive.
- 더 싼 거 있어요?  
Is there anything cheaper?
- 이게 제일 싼 거예요. This is the cheapest.
- 좀 더 보고 올게요.  
I'll go look around a bit more.

**Close-Up**

**1 좀**  
(Please and a little)

좀 has two meanings. One meaning of 좀 expresses politeness. In this conversation, the 좀 in “선풍기 좀 보여 주세요” corresponds to this. The other is an abbreviated form of 조금 which is often used in colloquial conversations. In this conversation, the 좀 of “좀 비싸요” and “좀 더 보고 올게요” corresponds to this.

(Ex.) 바지가 좀 커요. 작은 바지 좀 보여 주세요.  
The pants are a little big. Please show me the small-sized pants.

**2 The pronoun 거**  
(The pronoun “one”)

거 is mainly used in colloquial conversations when indicating a previously referred to noun. In the conversation, 싼 거 is used in place of 싼 선풍기. The original form of 거 is 것, but it is changed into 거 to make pronunciation easy in colloquial conversations.

(Ex.) 가방이 너무 커요. 작은 거 (= 가방) 있어요?  
The bag is too big. Do you have a smaller one?

**Flashback**

**• Adjectives with opposite meanings**

<p>5,000원      2,000,000원</p>  <p>싸다 ↔ 비싸다 to be cheap    to be expensive</p>	 <p>많다 ↔ 적다 to be many    to be few</p>	 <p>크다 ↔ 작다 to be big      to be small</p>	 <p>키가 크다 ↔ 키가 작다 to be tall    to be short</p>
 <p>같다 ↔ 다르다 to be same    to be different</p>	 <p>재미있다 ↔ 재미없다 to be fun      to be not fun</p>	 <p>쉽다 ↔ 어렵다 to be easy      to be difficult</p>	 <p>춥다 ↔ 덥다 to be cold      to be hot</p>

편하다 to be comfortable ↔ 불편하다 to be uncomfortable      좋다 to be good ↔ 나쁘다 to be bad  
가볍다 to be light ↔ 무겁다 to be heavy                              깨끗하다 to be clean ↔ 더럽다 to be dirty



## The Comparative **보다 더** and the superlative **제일, 가장**

In Korean, unlike in English, when comparing objects, markers and adverbs are used. Comparatives are expressed by adding the marker **보다** to the object being compared and using the adverb **더**. For example, if you want to say that Busan is hotter than Seoul in the summer, make the subject 부산 first and add 보다 to the end of the object of comparison, 서울. Then, add 더 in front of the adjective 더워요 to complete the sentence. Even if the adverb 더 is omitted, the meaning of the comparative can be conveyed.

여름에 부산이 서울**보다 더** 더워요.

Busan is hotter than Seoul in summer.

비빔밥이 불고기**보다 (더)** 맛있어요.

Bibimbap is more delicious than bulgogi.

The superlative is expressed using the adverbs **제일** or **가장**. For example, if you want to express which city is the hottest in summer among Seoul, Incheon, and Busan, select 부산 as the subject and add the adverb 제일 or 가장 in front of the adjective 더워요.

월요일이 **제일** 바빠요.

Mondays are the busiest.

축구가 **가장** 재미있어요.

Soccer is the most fun (sport).

When limiting the choices in comparing objects, **중에서** is used. For example, you can express a limited range by using **중에서** or you can specify the comparison by saying A하고 B **중에서**.

A 봄하고 가을 **중에서** 뭐를 **더** 좋아해요?

Which do you like more, spring or autumn?

B 봄을 **더** 좋아해요.

I like spring more.

A 스포츠 **중에서** 뭐가 **제일** 재미있어요?

What sport do you enjoy the most?

B 수영이 **제일** 재미있어요.

Swimming is the most fun.

### ! Be careful!

Be careful with the vowel pronunciation 더. Different pronunciations have totally different meanings.

ⓧ 더 (more): 커피가 주스보다 **더** 싸요.

Coffee is cheaper than juice.

ⓧ 다 (both, all): 고기하고 생선 **다** 좋아해요.

I like both meat and fish.

ⓧ 도 (also): 야채가 싸요, 그리고 물**도** 싸요.

Vegetables are cheap, and water is cheap, too.

# Quiz Yourself !

**1~3** Look at the picture and complete the sentence.

Ex.



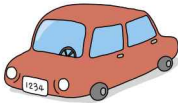
겨울



가을

겨울이 가을 보다 더 추워요.

1.



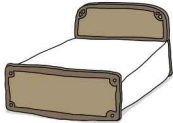
자동차



비행기

\_\_\_\_\_가 \_\_\_\_\_보다 \_\_\_\_\_ 빨라요.

7,300,000원



침대

10,000원

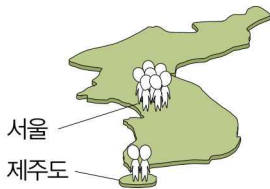


의자

2.

\_\_\_\_\_가 \_\_\_\_\_보다 \_\_\_\_\_ 비싸요.

3.



서울

제주도

서울이 제주도보다 사람이 \_\_\_\_\_.

**4~7** Complete the conversation by choosing the correct answer.

4. A 여름하고 겨울 중에서 뭐가 ① 더 / ② 제일 좋아요?  
B 여름이 좋아요.
5. A 진수하고 마크 중에서 누가 ① 더 / ② 제일 키가 커요?  
B 마크가 키가 커요.
6. A 영화하고 음악하고 그림 중에서 뭐를 ① 더 / ② 제일 좋아해요?  
B 영화를 가장 좋아해요.
7. A 봄, 여름, 가을, 겨울 중에서 어떤 계절을 ① 더 / ② 제일 좋아해요?  
B 가을을 가장 좋아해요.

Answer p.278

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 100

## 더 -(으)ㄴ 거 있어요?

Requesting for something

너무 비싸요. 더 싼 거 있어요?

(It's) too expensive. Do you have anything cheaper?

너무 커요. 더 작은 거 있어요?

(It's) too big. Do you have a smaller one?

너무 무거워요. 더 가벼운 거 있어요?

(It's) too heavy. Do you have something lighter?

너무 어두워요. 더 밝은 거 있어요?

(It's) too dark. Do you have something brighter?

## 이 중에서 뭐가 제일 ...?

Asking for specific information

이 중에서 뭐가 제일 싸요?

Which one is the cheapest?

이 중에서 뭐가 제일 튼튼해요?

Which one is the strongest?

이 중에서 뭐가 제일 인기가 많아요?

Which one is the most popular?

이 중에서 뭐가 제일 후기가 좋아요?

Which one has the best review?

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to products

세일하다 to have a sale

할인하다 to give a discount

포장하다 to pack, wrap

배달하다 to deliver

보증서 guarantee, warranty

보증 기간 the terms of the guarantee,  
the warranty period

서비스 센터 service center



배달하다

세일하다

할인하다

# Conversation Rehearsal



track 101

## 다른 (Noun) 없어요?

Requesting for something

이거 어때요?

How about this?

→ 다른 거 없어요?

→ Is there anything else?

→ 다른 색 없어요?

→ Is there any other color?

→ 다른 모델 없어요?

→ Is there any other model?

→ 다른 디자인 없어요?

→ Is there any other design?

## (service) 돼요?

Asking for service availability

카드 돼요?

Do you accept credit cards?

→ 네, 됩니다.

→ Yes, we do.

포장 돼요?

Can I take out it?

→ 네, 됩니다.

→ Yes, you can.

배달 돼요?

Do you deliver?

→ 죄송합니다. 안 됩니다.

→ Sorry. We don't.

## Pronunciation Tip

많아요 [마나요] / 많고 [만코]



track 102

When a double consonant ㅌ or ㅍ in the final consonant precedes immediately a vowel in the next syllable, the second consonant ㅌ of the double consonant ㅌㅌ or ㅍㅍ is omitted and not pronounced, and the first consonant ㄴ, ㅁ is used as the initial sound of the next syllable. In the example above, ㅌ is omitted as a vowel is followed by the second consonant ㅌ in the double consonant ㅌㅌ of 많. The first consonant ㄴ of 많 moves to the initial sound 아 in the next syllable and is pronounced as [마나요]. On the other hand, in the second example, if ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅌ is combined after the double consonant ㅌㅌ of 많, ㅌ is combined with the sounds of ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅌ and is pronounced as [ㄱ, ㅌ, ㅌ]. Thus, 많고 is pronounced as [만코].



## Coffee Break

### Useful expressions for shopping

There are times when you go into a store to buy something, and there are times when you just look and don't buy. If you only go to take a quick look, the first time you enter the store, say 그냥 구경 좀 할게요. You can freely browse items under the guidance of friendly staff. If you come across an item you want to take a closer look at, say to the staff, OO 좀 보여 주세요. As in the conversation above, when you come out without buying anything, you can say 좀 더 보고 올게요 or 다음에 올게요.

## Korean pronunciation of English words

There are many words of foreign origin in Korean that derive from English. However, some foreigners can't understand these English words because Koreans' English pronunciation is so different. Looking at the Korean method of pronouncing English words will help foreigners to communicate with Koreans.

First, Korean syllables consist of vowels connected with consonants. So when pronouncing a word, consonants alone cannot be pronounced and vowels must be added. For words that end in a consonant like “d” and “s” (such as “salad” or “Christmas”), Korean people have to add a weak vowel sound such as 으 to the end of the consonant when pronouncing it. So when pronouncing “salad” and “Christmas” each syllable is divided based on consonant-vowel blends (such as 드 or 스). Likewise, “salad” is broken down as sal-la-d and becomes 샐러드, and “Christmas” is broken down as ch-ri-s-ma-s and becomes 크리스마스.

Second, Korean doesn't have distinct sounds for f/p, b/v, or r/l. So, “f” and “p” are both pronounced 피, “b” and “v” are both pronounced 뱌, and ㄹ is used for both “r” and “l”. So while having completely different pronunciations in English, “fan” and “pan” are pronounced as 팬 in Korean. Likewise, “wifi” becomes 와이파이 and “pie” becomes 파이; thereby, sharing the same 피 sound. Similarly, since there is no distinction between “b” and “v”, “box” and “vox” make use of the same 뱌 sound as 박스. And, since there is no distinction between “r” and “l”, “reader” and “leader” is pronounced with the same ㄹ as 리더.

Third, in English, there are stresses when pronouncing a word, so the strength and weakness are clear, but in Korean, there is no special stress, so all syllables are pronounced with the same length and speed. For example, “Macdonald's” is pronounced 맥도날드 by dividing it into syllables as mac-do-nal-d and then these syllables are pronounced evenly with the same length and speed without any stress. Starbucks is also pronounced “Starbucks” by dividing it into syllables as s-tar-buck-s and pronouncing it without stress. If you take a taxi in Korea and say your destination and the taxi driver can't understand English words, make sure you are dividing your words into syllables and pronouncing each syllable with an even length and tone.

In addition, there are cases where English words were created by Koreans and settled as Korean English (Konglish). For example, the Korean word used for Warranty Service is “After service” Also, in Korean, a signature is 사인 (sign), a cell phone is 핸드폰 (hand-phone), and the meaning of drinking an alcoholic drink bottom up is 원샷 (one shot).

Getting used to Korean words of foreign origin means getting used to Korean pronunciation. Let's have fun studying while reading the signboards on the streets in Korea.



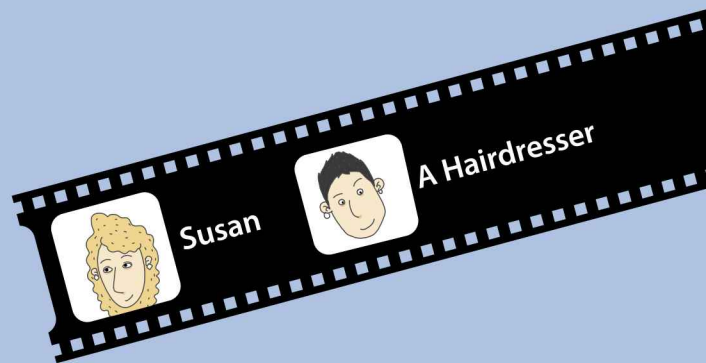
Scene 14

At a beauty salon

Getting a haircut

너무 짧지 않게 잘라 주세요.

Please cut it so that it is not too short.



# Conversation



track 103



직원 어서 오세요. 여기 앉으세요.

수잔 감사합니다.

직원 머리를 어떻게 할까요?

수잔 너무 짧지 않게 잘라 주세요.

직원 어느 정도로 잘라 드릴까요?

수잔 *(Showing the length of hair with her fingers)*  
이 정도요.

직원 네, 앞머리는 어떻게 할까요?

수잔 앞머리는 자르지 마세요.

직원 알겠습니다.

Employee Come in. Please, take a seat here.

Susan Thank you.

Employee How would you like your hair to be done?

Susan Please cut it so that it is not too short.

Employee How short would you like it (to be cut)?

Susan *(Showing the length of hair with her fingers)*  
This much.

Employee Okay. How would you like your bangs?

Susan Do not cut my bangs, please.

Employee All right.



▶ New Vocabulary

- 머리 hair
- 너무 too
- 짧다 to be short
- 않다 to be not, do not
- 자르다 to cut
- 어느 which
- 정도 how much
- 앞머리 bangs (lit. front hair)

▶ New Expressions

- 머리를 어떻게 할까요?  
How would you like your hair to be done?
- 잘라 주세요. Please, cut/trim it.
- 어느 정도로 잘라 드릴까요?  
How short would you like it (to be cut)?
- 이 정도요. This much.
- 앞머리는 어떻게 할까요?  
How would you like your bangs?
- 자르지 마세요. Do not cut it, please.

▶ Close-Up

1 -(으)니까요?

(Gently asking another person's intention)

-(으)니까요? is used to politely ask about the other person's intentions in a soft manner. Although you can semantically convey politeness without this specific pattern, -(으)니까요? comes across as a cautious means. In this conversation, "머리를 어떻게 할까요?" has the same meaning as "머리를 어떻게 해요?", but the hairdresser uses -(으)니까요? to carefully ask the customer's intention or preference.

- (Ex.) A 앞머리를 자르니까요? Should I cut your bangs?
- B 네, 조금 잘라 주세요. Yes, please cut it a little.

2 이 정도

(Using the hand to indicate the approximate quantity or the level)

이 정도 is used when indicating a certain amount or measuring by using your thumb and index finger. In this conversation, 이 정도 (this much) is used with a finger gesture to describe the length of hair to be cut. Simply use 이 정도 when you want to explain a rough amount or length of an object in an easy-to-understand way.

Flashback

• Irregular verbs I: 으 and 르

1. The omission of 으

When a stem ending with a vowel (for example -아요 or -어요) is combined between a verb stem or an adjective stem ending in 으, the 으 at the end syllable of the stem is always dropped.

- 모으다 (to collect/gather): 모으 + -아요 → 모 + -아요 → 모아요  
(Ex.) 저는 우표를 모아요. I collect stamps.
- 슬프다 (to be sad): 슬프 + -어요 → 슬프 + -어요 → 슬퍼요  
(Ex.) 친구하고 헤어져서 슬퍼요. I am sad because I parted ways with my friend.

2. The irregular 르

If a stem ending with a vowel -아/어 (for example -아/어요, -았었어요) is combined between a verb stem or an adjective stem ending in 르 the 으 is omitted and 르 is added.

- 다르다 (to be different): 다르 + -아요 → 다르 + -아요 → 달라 + -아요 → 달라요  
(Ex.) 한국어는 영어하고 너무 달라요. Korean is very different from English.
- 부르다 (to call): 부르 + -었어요 → 부르 + -었어요 → 불르 + -었어요 → 불렀어요  
(Ex.) 어제 친구하고 한국 노래를 불렀어요. Yesterday, I sang a Korean song with my friend.



## -게 Changing an adjective into an adverb

Add -게 to the end of the adjective stem to make an adverb regardless of whether the stem ends in a vowel or a consonant. -게 is used to modify an action or condition. For example, to make 비싸게, add -게 to the stem of the adjective 비싸다.

크다	크게 말해 주세요.	Please speak loudly.
슬프다	여자가 슬프게 울었어요.	The woman cried sadly.
반갑다	저는 친구하고 반갑게 인사했어요.	I warmly greeted my friend.
깨끗하다	어제 방을 깨끗하게 청소했어요.	I cleaned the room neatly yesterday.
쉽다	쉽게 문제를 해결했어요.	I solved the problem easily.

You can emphasize the adverb's meaning by using 아주, 정말, 너무 before the adverb.

남자가 아주 거만하게 말했어요.	The man spoke very arrogantly.
친구하고 정말 맛있게 음식을 먹었어요.	I really enjoyed the food with my friend.
여자 친구하고 너무 쉽게 헤어졌어요.	He broke up with his girlfriend so easily.

When using two or more adverbs, connect the adverbs with -고 and use it as follows.

시골에 가서 여름 방학을 재미있고 알차게 보냈어요.  
I went to the countryside and had a fun and fulfilling summer vacation.

**! Be careful!**

Some adjectives don't use -게 when making adverbs. The following are examples of the most common exceptions.

많다 → 많이: 점심을 너무 많이 먹었어요.	I ate too much for lunch.
빠르다 → 빨리: 지금 빨리 가야 돼요.	Now I have to go quickly.
멀다 → 멀리: 회사에서 멀리 살아요.	I live far from the office.

# Quiz Yourself !

**1~4** Match the picture with the appropriate sentence.

㉠ 조용하게 말해 주세요.

㉡ 맵게 만들어 주세요.

㉢ 건강하게 잘 지내세요.

㉣ 다른 의자에 편하게 앉으세요.

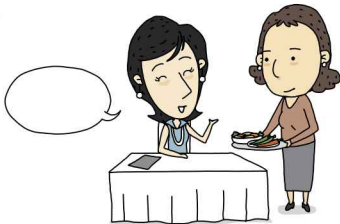
1.



2.



3.



4.



**5~8** Complete the sentences by using -게.

Ex. 수잔이 예쁘게 화장했어요.  
(예쁘다)

5. 수잔이 매일 \_\_\_\_\_ 일해요.  
(바쁘다)

6. 수잔이 케이크를 \_\_\_\_\_ 만들었어요.  
(크다)

7. 수잔이 머리를 \_\_\_\_\_ 자르고 싶어요.  
(짧다)

8. 수잔이 문제를 \_\_\_\_\_ 해결했어요.  
(쉽다)

Answer p.278

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 104

## -게 -아/어 주세요

Specifically requesting something to be done

크게 말해 주세요.

Please, speak **out** loudly.

맵게 만들어 주세요.

Please, make it **spicy**.

따뜻하게 빵을 데워 주세요.

Please, heat up the **bread** so that it is **warm**.

시원하게 에어컨을 틀어 주세요.

Please, turn on the **air conditioner** so that it is **cool**.

## 너무 -지 않게 잘라 주세요

Specifically requesting something not to be done

너무 짧지 않게 잘라 주세요.

Please, cut it so that it is **not too short**.

너무 크지 않게 잘라 주세요.

Please, cut it so that it is **not too big**.

너무 길지 않게 잘라 주세요.

Please, cut it so that it is **not too long**.

너무 두껍지 않게 잘라 주세요.

Please, cut it so that it is **not too thick**.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to the hair salon

자르다 to cut

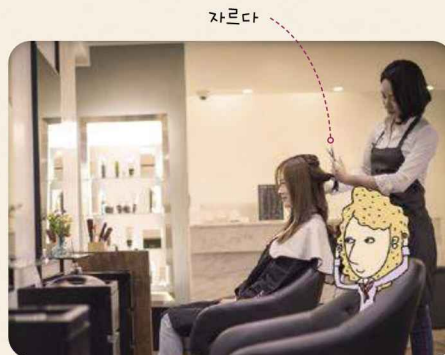
다듬다 to trim

파마하다 to perm

염색하다 to dye

기본 요금 basic fee

추가 요금 additional fee



파마하다

# Conversation Rehearsal



track 105

(interrogative pronoun) **-(으)니까요?**

Carefully asking another person's opinion

몇 시에 연락**할**까요?

→ 저녁 6시에 연락해 주세요.

이 물건을 어디에 놓**을**까요?

→ 여기에 놓아 주세요.

이 음식을 어떻게 **할**까요?

→ 냉장고에 넣어 주세요.

What time **should I** contact you?

→ Please call me at 6 pm.

Where **would you like me** to place this stuff?

→ Please place it here.

What **should I** do with this food?

→ Please put it in the refrigerator.

**이게 ... 뭐예요?**

Asking the meaning of something

이게 영어로 **뭐**예요?

What is **this** in English?

이게 한국어로 **뭐**예요?

What is **this** in Korean?

이게 무슨 **의미**예요?

What does **this** signify?

이게 무슨 **뜻**이에요?

What does **this** mean?

## Pronunciation Tip

**어떻게** [어떠케]

When the consonant ㅈ is followed by ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅈ and ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅈ are combined to be pronounced as [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅈ]. In the above example, ㅈ of **어떻게** is pronounced as [ㄱ] as ㄱ proceeds **떨**. Therefore, **어떻게** is pronounced as [어떠케].

예 **이렇다** [이러타] **그렇죠** [그러쵸]



track 106



Coffee Break

### Expressions for styling hair

When you go to a Korean hair salon, you may find it difficult to describe the details of styling your hair in Korean. If so, ask them to show you a photo or magazine with different hairstyles so you can see and choose for yourself. Or, find a picture of the hairstyle you want, show it to the hairdresser, and say, **이렇게 해 주세요**. When expressing the length, you can use your hands to say **이 정도**, and when expressing the shape, you can use your hands to say **이렇게**.

### *K - beauty*



All women care about their skin, but Korean women especially pay special attention to skincare to maintain healthy skin. Moreover, in Korea, people prefer pale skin like white jade rather than sun-tanned skin, so they do not neglect their efforts to maintain fair skin. In midsummer, when the sun is shining brightly, sunscreen is essential, and it is to see young women on the street using parasols to protect their skin from strong UV rays. It is not easy to tell the age of a woman based on her appearance alone in Korea as 동안(젊어 보이는 얼굴) (young-looking face) is the spectacle of the public eye.

Korean cosmetics, well known as “K-beauty”, is an iconic example that reveals how much Koreans care about their appearance. Korean cosmetics emphasize translucent skin that shines rather than emphasizing flashy colors, and various products focus on skin color correction and flaw reduction. In addition, the price range is also diverse to accommodate teenagers who lack pocket money to career women in their 30s and 40s. These days, there are cosmetics for young men who care about their skin, and even cosmetics stores sell cosmetics for soldiers in the military. The protective color applied to the face inconspicuously during military training is a cosmetic made with high-quality ingredients.

In Korea, skin care and plastic surgery are common. Gangnam, a wealthy town in Seoul, is crowded with dermatology and plastic surgery clinics for people who invest in their appearance. There are many people who want to follow or resemble Korean celebrities who are active in the movie, drama, and singing sectors. Recently, the number of foreigners who visit Korean dermatology and plastic surgery clinics is increasing. Who doesn't want to look younger and prettier? In Korean society, K-beauty can be understood as a desire of people who want to flaunt their beauty.



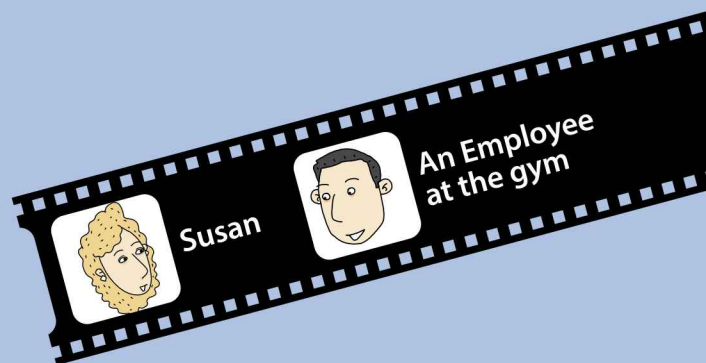
Scene **15**

At a gym

Asking for information

토요일에 하지만  
일요일에 쉽니다.

We are open on Saturdays but closed on Sundays.



# Conversation



track 107



- 수잔 다음 달부터 운동하려고 해요.  
한 달에 얼마예요?
- 직원 한 달에 10만 원입니다.
- 수잔 몇 시부터 몇 시까지 해요?
- 직원 아침 6시부터 밤 10시까지 합니다.
- 수잔 토요일에도 하죠?
- 직원 네, 토요일에 하지만 일요일에 쉽니다.
- 수잔 안을 볼 수 있어요?
- 직원 그럼요. 이쪽으로 오세요.

- Susan I'd like to exercise starting next month. How much is it for a month?
- Employee It's 100,000 won per month.
- Susan From what time to what time are you open?
- Employee From 6 am to 10 pm.
- Susan You are open on Saturdays too, right?
- Employee Yes, we are open on Saturdays but closed on Sundays.
- Susan Can I look around inside?
- Employee Of course. Come this way, please.



**New Vocabulary**

- 다음 달 next month
- 부터 from (time), starting
- 운동하다 to exercise
- 하다 to do, to have
- 아침 morning (am)
- 밤 night (pm)
- 토요일 Saturday
- 일요일 Sunday
- 쉬다 to rest (not work)
- 안 inside

**New Expressions**

- 한 달에 얼마예요?  
How much is it for a month?
- 몇 시부터 몇 시까지 해요?  
From what time to what time are you open?
- 토요일에도 하죠?  
You are open on Saturdays too, right?
- 안을 볼 수 있어요?  
Can I look around inside?
- 이쪽으로 오세요.  
Come this way, please.

**Close-Up**

**1 Markers 부터 and 까지**

(Expressing beginning and end times)

부터 indicates the beginning of time, and 까지 indicates the end of time. In this conversation, when asking about the operating hours of the gym, 아침 6시부터 밤 10시까지 express that it opens at 6 am and closes at 10 pm. Unlike the range of time, the markers 에서 and 까지 are used with distances to indicate the start and end points.

- (Ex.) 월요일부터 금요일까지 아르바이트해요.  
I work part-time from Monday to Friday.
- (Ex.) 서울에서 부산까지 기차로 가요.  
I go from Seoul to Busan by train.

**2 죠?**

(Checking information)

In colloquial conversation, 죠? is used to confirm that the listener already knows what the speaker is saying. 죠? is combined with verbs and adjectives regardless of whether the stem ends in a vowel or a consonant. Its original form is 지요?, but it is shortened and used as 죠? in practice.

- (Ex.) A 거기 마크 씨 집이죠? That's Mark's house over there, isn't it?  
B 네, 맞아요. Yes, that's right.



**• Days of the week**

The following terms describe the days of the week.

← 주중 Weekdays → 주말 Weekend →

월요일	화요일	수요일	목요일	금요일	토요일	일요일
Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday	Sunday

휴일 (Holidays) rest days, days-off 평일 (Weekday) ordinary days, neither a weekend nor a holiday.

- 첫째 주: the first week
- 둘째 주: the second week
- 셋째 주: the third week
- 넷째 주: the fourth week
- 다섯째 주: the fifth week
- 지난주: last week
- 이번 주: this week
- 다음 주: next week



## -지만 but

-지만 is used when you want to indicate a contrast between what is said before and after. -지만 is a grammar pattern that connects two sentences that are opposite to each other with the connecting adverb 그렇지만 or 하지만 into one sentence. -지만 is used with verbs and adjectives. Simply add -지만 to the end of the verb or adjective stem regardless of whether it ends in a vowel or a consonant.

- 비싸다** 이 식당은 비싸**지만** 맛이 없어요.  
This restaurant is expensive, but not very tasty.
- 좋다** 오늘 날씨가 좋**지만** 어제 날씨가 안 좋았어요.  
The weather today is good, but the weather yesterday was bad.
- 하다** 토요일에는 하**지만** 일요일에는 하지 않아요.  
It opens on Saturday, but closes on Sunday.
- 있다** 한국 친구가 있**지만** 자주 만날 수 없어요.  
I have a Korean friend, but we can't meet often.
- 먹다** 저는 생선을 먹**지만** 고기를 안 먹어요.  
I eat fish, but I don't eat meat.
- 보고 싶다** 그 영화를 보고 싶**지만** 시간이 없어요.  
I want to see that movie, but I have no time.

To make contrasts involving the past, -았/었지만 is used adding -았/었- to -지만 to indicate the past tense.

- 작다** 어렸을 때 키가 작**았지만** 지금은 키가 커요.  
I was short when I was young, but now I am tall.
- 보다** 영화를 봤**지만** 제목이 생각 안 나요.  
I saw the movie, but I can't remember the title.
- 먹다** 아까 점심을 먹**었지만** 배가 고파요.  
I ate lunch a while ago, but I'm still hungry.

## Quiz Yourself !

**1~4** Complete the sentence by choosing the correct answer.

1. 시간이 있지만 ① 돈이 있어요.  
② 돈이 없어요.
2. 한국 음식을 좋아하지만 ① 김치를 먹을 수 있어요.  
② 김치를 먹을 수 없어요.
3. 어제 친구를 기다렸지만 ① 친구가 왔어요.  
② 친구가 안 왔어요.
4. 부산에 안 갔지만 ① 제주도에는 갔어요.  
② 제주도에는 안 갔어요.

**5~9** Complete the sentence by using -지만.

5. 이 구두가 정말 멋있어요. 하지만 너무 비싸요.  
→
6. 한국어를 많이 공부하고 싶어요. 하지만 시간이 없어요.  
→
7. 비빔밥이 매워요. 하지만 맛있어요.  
→
8. 어제 숙제를 했어요. 하지만 안 가져 왔어요.  
→
9. 약을 먹었어요. 하지만 효과가 없어요.  
→

Answer p.278

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 108

## -지만

Saying the opposite

2층에 남자 화장실이 없**지만**  
여자 화장실이 있어요.

There's no men's restroom on the 2nd floor,  
**but** there's a women's restroom.

주말에 사람이 많**지만**  
주중에 사람이 많지 않아요.

There are a lot of people on the weekends,  
**but** there are not many people on the  
weekdays.

평일에 일찍 일어나**지만**  
주말에 늦게 일어나요.

I get up early on weekdays,  
**but** late on weekends.

## -았/었지만

Saying something opposite from your expectations

운동**했**지만 살이 안 빠져요.

I've been working out, **but** I'm not losing  
weight.

밥을 먹**었**지만 아직도 배고파요.

I ate, **but** I'm still hungry.

커피를 마**셨**지만 자고 싶어요.

I drank coffee, **but** I want to sleep.

한국어를 공부**했**지만 아직 어려워요.

I studied Korean, **but** it is still difficult.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to exercise

탈의실 changing room

샤워실 shower room

사물함(로커) private locker

운동복 gym suit

운동화 gym shoes, running shoes

수건 towel, washcloth



샤워실



수건

운동복

탈의실

# Conversation Rehearsal



track 109

## (time)부터 (time)까지

Talking about a term

언제부터 언제까지 휴가예요?

→ 수요일부터 금요일까지 휴가예요.

며칠부터 며칠까지 여행 가요?

→ 23일부터 26일까지 여행 가요.

몇 시부터 몇 시까지 가게를 해요?

→ 아침 9시부터 저녁 8시까지 해요.

From when to when are you on vacation?

→ I'm on vacation from Wednesday to Friday.

From what day to what day are you traveling?

→ I'm going on a trip from the 23rd to the 26th.

From what time to what time do you open the shop?

→ From 9 am to 8 pm.

## 죠?

Verifying something

주말에 사람이 많죠?

→ 네, 주말에 사람이 많아요.

사물함이 있죠?

→ 네, 사물함이 있어요.

휴일에 문을 닫죠?

→ 네, 휴일에 문을 닫아요.

There are many people on the weekend, right?

→ Yes, there are a lot of people on the weekends.

Do you have lockers, don't you?

→ Yes, there are lockers.

Are you closed on holidays, right?

→ Yes, we are closed on holidays.

## Pronunciation Tip

### 몇 시 [면 씨]

Since the consonants ㄷ, ㅌ, ㅊ, ㅌ, ㅊ, ㅊ are all pronounced as [ㄷ], 몇 is pronounced as [면]. The initial sound of the next syllable ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅊ, ㅊ which is followed by the final consonant [ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅊ], is pronounced as [ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅊ]. Therefore, the first sound ㅈ of 시 after [면] is pronounced as [ㅈ].

예 몇 분 [면 분] 몇 장 [면 장]



track 110



## Coffee Break

### Expressions for periods

In Scene 7, we learned how the marker 에 is used to group ranges. In the previous conversation, the amount corresponding to a period of one month was expressed as 한 달에 10만 원이에요. If you pay the same amount 매달, you can say 매달 10만 원이에요. It is useful to know words like 매일 (every day), 매주 (every week), 매달 (every month), 매년 (every year).

# Holidays in Korea



Korean holidays are based on the date. Except for a few cases, there are no additional holidays even when weekends and nationally recognized holidays overlap. So, when the calendar comes out, Koreans check the holidays marked in red every year. Let's find out about Korean holidays.

Korean holidays are celebrated according to the lunar calendar and include 설날 (Korean New Year's Day, the first day of the first month of the lunar calendar) and 추석 (Korean Thanksgiving Day, the 15<sup>th</sup> day of the 8<sup>th</sup> month of the lunar calendar). 설날 and 추석 In the case of these holidays, one day before and after both 추석 and 설날 are also considered legal holidays.

There are also public holidays that commemorate specific historical or religious days. The chronological order of public holidays in Korea is as follows.



- 양력설 (January 1<sup>st</sup> of the solar calendar): The Gregorian calendar New Year
- 삼일절 (March 1<sup>st</sup> of the solar calendar): A day of remembrance for the 1919 movement for Korean independence from Japanese colonization
- 석가탄신일 (April 8<sup>th</sup> of the lunar calendar): The birthday of Buddha
- 어린이날 (May 5<sup>th</sup> of the solar calendar): A day when families spend time with their children
- 현충일 (June 6<sup>th</sup> of the solar calendar): A day to honor those who lost their lives for their country
- 광복절 (August 15<sup>th</sup> of the solar calendar): A day to commemorate when Korea became an independent nation overcoming Japanese colonization after the end of the Second World War in 1945
- 개천절 (October 3<sup>rd</sup> of the solar calendar): A day to commemorate the founding of Korea's founding father, 단군, about 5,000 years ago
- 한글날 (October 9<sup>th</sup> of the solar calendar): A day to commemorate the promulgation of Hangeul by King Sejong of the Joseon Dynasty (1946)
- 성탄절 (December 25<sup>th</sup> of the solar calendar): The day that Jesus Christ was born

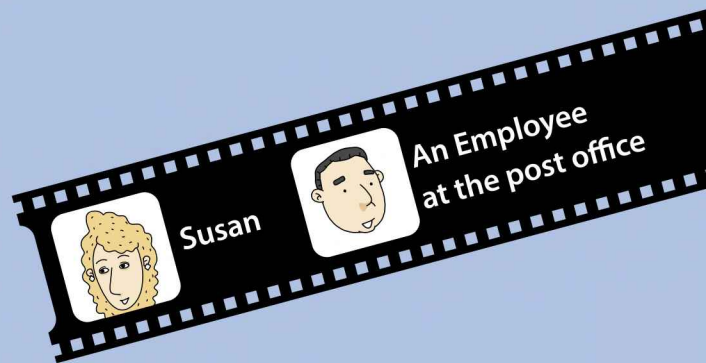
Scene **16**

At the post office

Sending a parcel

비행기로 보내시겠어요?

Would you like to send it by plane?





수잔 택배를 보내고 싶어요.

직원 어디로 보내실 거예요?

수잔 호주로 보낼 거예요.

직원 택배를 비행기로 보내시겠어요?  
배로 보내시겠어요?

수잔 시간이 얼마나 걸려요?

직원 비행기는 3~4일, 배는 1~2달쯤 걸려요.

수잔 그럼, 비행기로 보낼게요.

직원 알겠습니다.

Susan I would like to send a parcel.

Employee Where would you like to send it?

Susan I'd like to send this to Australia.

Employee Would you like to send it by airmail or by ship?

Susan How long would it take?

Employee By airmail, it would take 3-4 days, and by ship, it would take about 1-2 months.

Susan Then, I'll use airmail.

Employee Alright.



▶ **New Vocabulary**

- 택배 parcel
- 보내다 to send
- 호주 Australia
- 비행기 airplane
- 배 boat, ship
- 걸리다 to take (time)
- 은/는 the marker for comparison
- 일 day

▶ **New Expressions**

- 어디로 보내실 거예요?  
Where would you like to send it?
- 비행기로 보내시겠어요?  
Would you like to send it by airmail?
- 배로 보내시겠어요?  
Would you like to send it by ship?
- 시간이 얼마나 걸려요?  
How long would it take?
- 비행기로 보낼게요.  
I'll use airmail.

▶ **Close-Up**

**1 The marker 은/는**  
(Emphasizing a comparison)

When comparing two or more objects, you can add 은/는 to the end of the objects to emphasize the comparison. When a noun ends in a vowel, 는 is used, and when a noun ends in a consonant, 은 is combined. In this conversation, to contrast the plane and the ship, the marker 은/는 was used. Using this marker is like pointing to each object with your finger and raising your tone slightly as you compare them.

- (Ex.) 한국 사람은 매운 음식을 잘 먹는데 제 한국 친구는 매운 음식을 잘 못 먹어요.  
Koreans eat spicy food well, but my Korean friend does not eat spicy food well.

**2 How to read a period**  
(Reading periods of 3-4 days or 1-2 months)

When reading a period, the number written before 일 (date), 주 (week), 년 (year) is read as a Sino-Korean number, and the number before 달 (month) is read as a native Korean number. As in the conversation, 3-4일 is read 삼사일 and 1-2달 is read 한두 달. If it is not a continuous number, include the marker 에서 as in 3-7일 (three to seven days) (삼일에서 칠일) and 2-5달 (two to five months) (두 달에서 다섯 달).

- (Ex.) 일주일에 2-3번 (두세 번) 운동해요.  
I exercise 2 to 3 times a week.
- (Ex.) 배로 3-5달 (세 달에서 다섯 달)쯤 걸려요.  
It takes about 3 to 5 months by ship.

**Flashback**

• **Reading dates**

When reading dates in Korean, Sino-Korean numbers are used. However, unlike in English, when reading dates in Korean, units are read from largest to smallest such as 년/월/일 (year/month/date).

Year	Month	Day
2021년	10월	10일
이천이십일년	시월	십일

월 month			
1월	2월	3월	4월
5월	▶ 6월	7월	8월
9월	▶ 10월	11월	12월

▶ **Exception**  
▶ 6월(유월) ▶ 10월(시월)

**! Be careful!**  
Unlike in English, when reading the year in Korean, the years are not read in a series of two digits.  
(Ex.) 1973년: "19" "73" (x) → 천구백칠십삼년 (O)

**! Be careful!**  
Note the following pronunciations.  
6(육)년 [용년]    8(팔)년 [팔년]    10(십)년 [십년]



## Expressing intent: **-겠-** and **-(으)르게요**

**-겠-** is used to express the intention or will of the speaker. **-겠-** is combined with a verb, regardless of whether the stem ends in a vowel or a consonant. Since the subject of **-겠-** in declarative sentences is always the first person, the subject of **-겠-** in the sentence where the subject is omitted is I (저는 or 제가).

- 시작하다**      오늘부터 운동을 시작하**겠**어요.      I want to start exercising today.
- 읽다**            앞으로 매일 30분씩 책을 읽**겠**습니다.      I will read a book for 30 minutes every day from now on.

**-겠-** expresses the intention of the speaker in a declarative sentence and expresses the intention of the listener in the interrogative sentence. When asking about the intentions of someone who is older or of higher status than you (for example, when a store employee speaks with customers) the meaning of respect **-(으)시-** is combined with **-겠-** and written **-(으)시겠어요**. When a verb stem ends in a vowel use **-시겠어요** and when it ends in a consonant use **-으시겠어요**. Since there is a question mark for **-(으)시겠어요**, say it while raising your tone at the end of the sentence. When answering a question, use **-겠-**. In everyday life, **-(으)르게요** is often used instead of **-겠-**. When a verb stem ends in a vowel, it is combined with **-르게요**, and when it ends with a consonant, **-을게요** is combined.

- 보다**            A 어떤 영화를 보**시**겠어요?      What movie would you like to see?  
                     B 저는 코미디 영화를 보**겠**어요. (= 볼**게**요)      I want to watch (= I'll see) a comedy movie.
- 앉다**            A 소파에 앉**으**시겠어요?      Would you like to sit on the sofa?  
                     B 아니요, 저는 의자에 앉**겠**어요. (= 앉**을**게요)      No, I'll sit (= I'll sit down) on the chair.

Some verbs (먹다, 마시다, 있다, 자다, 말하다) are used with **-(으)시-** to convey respect.

- 먹다**            A 어떤 걸로 드**시**겠어요?      What would you like to eat?  
                     B 저는 불고기를 먹**겠**어요. (= 먹**을**게요)      I'd like to eat bulgogi. (= I'll eat.)

**! Be careful!**

**-(으)르게요** and the future tense **-(으)르 거예요** look similar, but they have different meanings. **-(으)르 거예요** is used to describe what will happen in the future or when talking about a plan or schedule. **-(으)르게요** also is used to indicate the speaker's intention or will, and expresses the speaker's determination or willingness to make a promise to another person.

- ⓧ 제가 커피를 살**게**요.      I'll buy the coffee.
- ⓧ 내일 저는 친구한테 커피를 살 **거**예요.      Tomorrow I'm going to buy coffee for my friend.

# Quiz Yourself !

**1~4** Complete the sentences by using -겠- or -(으)게요.

**Ex.** 저는 이제부터 한국어를 열심히 공부하겠습니다/공부할게요.  
(공부하다)

1. 저는 매일 아침에 일찍 \_\_\_\_\_.  
(일어나다)
2. 앞으로 채소를 많이 \_\_\_\_\_.  
(먹다)
3. 이제부터 열심히 책을 \_\_\_\_\_.  
(읽다)
4. 한국 사람하고 영어로 \_\_\_\_\_.  
(말하지 않다)

**5~8** Look at the picture and complete the conversation by using -(으)시겠어요.

5.



A 어떤 색 가방을 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B 저는 빨간색 가방을 살게요.

6.



A 어떤 옷을 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B 양복을 입을게요.

7.



A 어떤 영화를 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B 저는 이 영화를 볼게요.

8.



A 뭐 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B 저는 커피를 마실게요.

Answer p.278

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 112

## -(으)시겠어요?, -(으)ㄹ게요

Asking and answering about intentions

무슨 커피를 드시겠어요?

What coffee would you like?

➔ 따뜻한 커피를 마실게요.

➔ I'll drink hot coffee.

무슨 영화를 보시겠어요?

What movie would you like to see?

➔ 코미디 영화를 볼게요.

➔ I'd like to watch a comedy movie.

무슨 음악을 들으시겠어요?

What music would you like to listen to?

➔ 한국 음악을 들을게요.

➔ I'll listen to Korean music.

## 다음에 -(으)ㄹ게요

Making a promise to another person

감사합니다. 다음에 제가 밥을 살게요.

Thank you. Next time I'll buy the meal.

감사합니다. 다음에 제가 집에 초대할게요.

Thank you. I'll invite you to my house next time.

미안합니다. 다음에 늦지 않을게요.

I'm sorry. I won't be late next time.

반갑습니다. 다음에 꼭 연락할게요.

Nice to meet you. I'll be sure to contact you next time.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to the post office

택배 parcel

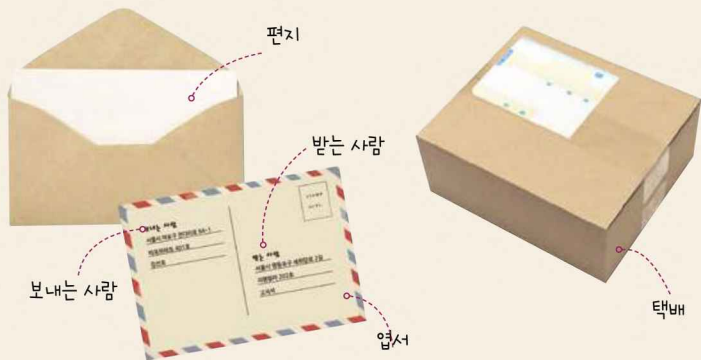
편지 letter

엽서 postcard

등기 registered mail

보내는 사람 sender (from)

받는 사람 recipient (to)



# Conversation Rehearsal



track 113

## (Noun) 에 따라 달라요

Speaking about variables

값이 얼마예요?

How much does it cost?

→ 무게에 따라 달라요.

→ It depends on the weight.

시간이 얼마나 걸려요?

How long does it take?

→ 가격에 따라 달라요.

→ It depends on the price.

김치 맛이 어때요?

How does kimchi taste?

→ 지역에 따라 달라요

→ It depends on the region.

## (Noun) 말고 다른 거 있어요?

Requesting something else

비행기 말고 다른 거 있어요?

Is there something other than airplanes?

커피 말고 다른 거 있어요?

Is there something other than coffee?

이거 말고 다른 거 있어요?

Is there something other than this?

저거 말고 다른 거 있어요?

Is there something other than that?

## Pronunciation Tip

### 걸려요 [걸려요]

The consonant ㄹ is pronounced differently depending on the situation. When ㄹ comes in the first sound of a syllable, it is pronounced close to [r], and when ㄹ is the final consonant, it is pronounced close to [l]. However, when ㄹ comes as the first sound after the consonant ㄹ, the first sound becomes [ll] and is pronounced as [ll].

예 골라요 [골라요] 이걸로 [이걸로]



track 114



## Coffee Break

### Registered mail: 등기

If you are concerned about the loss of mail, try using 등기, which allows you to track mail. At the post office, say 등기로 해 주세요 (I'd like to send it by registered mail, please.) and pay the 등기 수수료 (registered mail fee). However, it is advisable to check the registered value first, as the cost varies depending on the weight and time taken for the registered mail.

### *Korea's fast delivery service culture*



Koreans like to do things quickly as they have a 빨리빨리 (quickly quickly) culture. In a densely populated city life, fast delivery service is a very important virtue. For example, even when it comes to the shipping of online products, companies boast of fast delivery which is often referred to as 총알 배송 (bullet delivery). Terms like 당일 배송, which is delivered on the same day of order, and 새벽 배송, where items ordered in the evening are delivered at dawn the next day have been in use for quite some time. Shipping 2-3 days after an order is considered a slow delivery service in Korea. Some believe that the reason why there was no daily necessity crisis in Korea during the COVID-19 pandemic in 2020 is that fast delivery service was commercialized.

Food delivery also boasts fast and accurate service in Korea. Even if you deliver food from a park, home, or workplace that does not have an exact address, you can receive food delivered quickly and accurately. It's amazing how they deliver food accurately and quickly to the person who ordered it from among many people in the expansive Han River Park.

Services such as internet installation are also fast. In Korea, it is rare that the driver does not come to install the Internet cable on the same day that you apply for the Internet. Installation completion on the day of application is taken for granted in Korea. Korea's fast delivery service culture is deemed essential for Koreans who live a busy life and 빠름 (quickness) is revered as a virtue in an era where everything is fast.



# Chapter 5

Working out problems

**Scene 17** At a hospital

**Scene 18** At a clothes store

**Scene 19** At home

**Scene 20** The Lost-and-Found



장메이 (중국)  
Mei Chang (China)

# Chapter 5

Working out problems



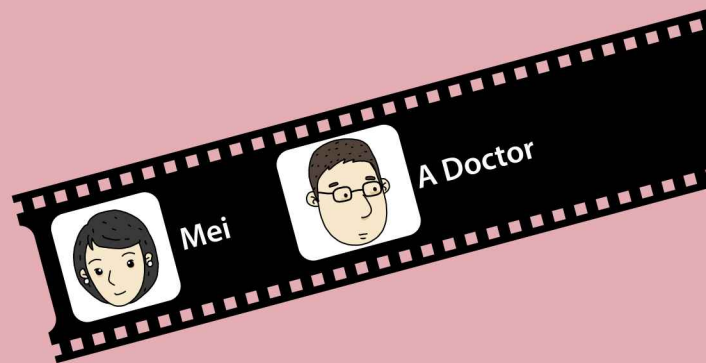
Scene **17**

At a hospital

Explaining symptoms

열도 있고 콧물도 나요.

I have a fever and a runny nose.





의사 어떻게 오셨어요?

메이 목이 아파서 왔어요.

의사 다른 데는 괜찮아요?

메이 열도 있고 콧물도 나요.

의사 언제부터 그랬어요?

메이 3일 전부터요.

의사 (After the examination) 좀 쉬어야 돼요.  
약을 먹고 3일 후에 다시 오세요.

Doctor What brings you here?

Mei I came because my throat hurts.

Doctor Is everything else all right?

Mei I have a fever and a runny nose.

Doctor Since when have you had these symptoms?

Mei Since 3 days ago.

Doctor (After the examination)

You need to take a rest.  
Please, take the medicine  
and come back again in 3  
days.

▶ **New Vocabulary**

- 목 throat
- 아프다 to be hurt, sick
- 데 part, place, spot
- 열 fever
- 콧물 runny nose
- 나다 to get (a medical disease),  
have (a symptom)
- 언제부터 since when
- 전 before
- 약 medicine
- 약을 먹다 to take medicine
- 다시 again

▶ **New Expressions**

- 어떻게 오셨어요?**  
What brings you here?
- 다른 데는 괜찮아요?**  
Is everything else all right?
- 열도 있고 콧물도 나요.**  
I have a fever and a runny nose.
- 언제부터 그랬어요?**  
Since when have you had these symptoms?
- 3일 전부터요.** Since 3 days ago.
- 다시 오세요.** Please, come back again.

▶ **Close-Up**

1 **어떻게 오셨어요?**

(Asking about the purpose of the visit)

어떻게 오셨어요? can be interpreted in two ways. One asks what kind of transportation you used to get to a destination, and the other asks about the purpose of your visit. In this conversation, the second meaning was used as the doctor asks what brought the patient to the hospital. The question 어떻게 오셨어요? is mainly used as a question to ask the purpose of the visit to someone who visits a public institution.

- (Ex.) A 어떻게 오셨어요? What brings you here?
- B 소화가 안돼서 왔어요. I came because of digestion trouble.

2 **The marker 은/는**

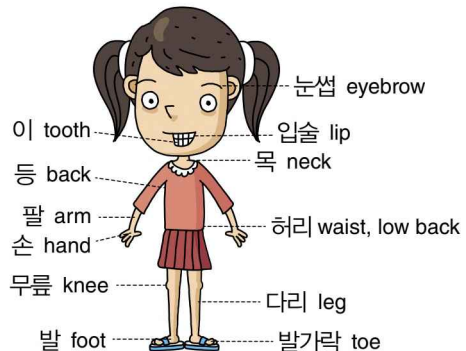
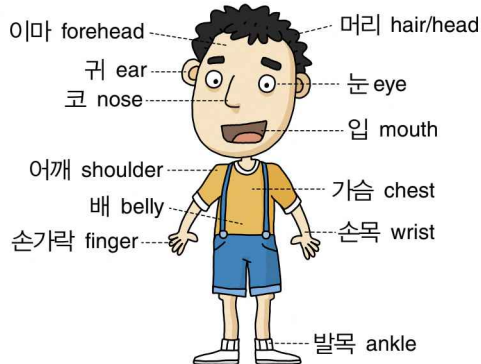
(Emphasizing)

The marker 은/는 is used to emphasize a specific noun. In the conversation, a patient who comes to the hospital with a sore throat is asked by the doctor if she is okay and emphasis is given to 다른 데 (another part) other than the neck. When the marker 은/는 is used with the subject marker 이/가 or the object marker 을/를, the subject or object marker is omitted and only the marker 은/는 is used. However, if markers other than the subject marker or object marker (for example 에, 에서, etc) are used with 은/는 the initial marker is not dropped and instead used together with 은/는 (for example 에는, 에서는, etc).

- (Ex.) A 머리가 너무 아파요. My head hurts a lot.
- B 그래요? 약은 먹었어요? Really? Did you take any medicine?

Flashback

• **Words for parts of the body**





## -고 and

-고 is used to list an event, action, condition, or fact. -고 connects two sentences listed with the connecting adverb 그리고 into one sentence. -고 is used with verbs, and adjectives, regardless of whether a verb stem or adjective stem ends in a vowel or a consonant. The marker 도 is sometimes used to emphasize repetition when listing something.

**좋아하다** 사과도 좋아하고 배도 좋아해요. I like apples and I like pears.

**재미있다** 한국어 공부도 재미있고 한국 생활도 재미있어요.  
Learning Korean is fun and living in Korea is also fun.

**오다** 비도 오고 바람도 불어요. It's raining and the wind is also blowing.

**있다** 열도 있고 콧물도 나요. I have a fever and a runny nose.

-고 is also used to connect consecutive actions. When linking past continuous actions, the past tense marker -았/었- is not combined with -고. Therefore, even if the tense is different, the conjugation of -고 is the same.

**현재** 보통 밥을 먹고 산책해요. I usually eat and go for a walk.

**과거** 어제 밥을 먹고 산책했어요. Yesterday I ate and went for a walk.

**미래** 내일 밥을 먹고 산책할 거예요. I'm going for a walk tomorrow after eating.

# Quiz Yourself !

**1~3** Look at the picture and complete the sentence by using -고.

Ex.



싸다

+



맛있다

→ 이 음식은 싸고 맛있어요.

1.



운동하다

+



쉬다

→ 메이는 보통 \_\_\_\_\_ 10분 쉬어요.

2.



춡다

+



머리가 아프다

→ 메이는 \_\_\_\_\_ 머리가 아파요.

3.



먹다

+



마시다

→ 메이는 어제 저녁을 \_\_\_\_\_ 녹차를 마셨어요.

**4~8** Complete the sentence by using -고.

Ex. 친구하고 같이 식사해요, 그리고 얘기해요. → 식사하고

4. 보통 오후에 커피를 마셔요, 그리고 일을 시작해요. →

5. 주말에 영화를 봐요, 그리고 저녁을 먹어요. →

6. 어제 일이 끝났어요, 그리고 친구를 만났어요. →

7. 지난주에 편지를 썼어요, 그리고 우체국에서 편지를 보냈어요. →

8. 한국어를 배울 거예요, 그리고 한국에서 일할 거예요. →

Answer p.279

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 116

## (Noun)도 -고 (Noun)도 ...

Listing

몸이 어때요?

➔ 머리도 아프고 목도 아파요.

여행이 어때요?

➔ 날씨도 좋고 음식도 맛있어요.

보통 주말에 뭐 해요?

➔ 운동도 하고 친구도 만나요.

How are you feeling?

➔ My head hurts and my neck hurts.

How is your trip?

➔ The weather is nice and the food is delicious.

What do you usually do on the weekends?

➔ I exercise and meet friends.

## -고 -(으)세요

Advising another person

약을 먹고 꼭 쉬세요.

Take the medicine and make sure you rest well.

30분씩 운동하고 채소를 자주 드세요.

Exercise for 30 minutes and eat vegetables often.

책을 읽고 사람들하고 얘기해 보세요.

Read books and talk to people.

회원 가입하고 인터넷으로 예약하세요.

Register as a member and make a reservation online.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to symptoms



감기에 걸리다  
(감기에 걸렸어요.)  
to catch a cold



목이 붓다  
(목이 부었어요.)  
to have a swollen throat



기침이 나다  
(기침이 나오.)  
to have a cough



다리를 다치다  
(다리를 다쳤어요.)  
to hurt one's leg



소화가 안되다  
(소화가 안돼요.)  
to experience indigestion



어지럽다  
(어지러워요.)  
to be dizzy

# Conversation Rehearsal



track 117

(time) **부터**

Describing symptoms

어제부터 머리가 아파요.

I had a headache **since** yesterday.

일주일 전부터 소화가 안돼요.

I've been experiencing indigestion **since** a week ago.

며칠 전부터 기침이 나요.

I've been coughing **since** a few days ago.

작년부터 어깨가 아파요.

My shoulder has been hurting **since** last year.

**-(으)면 어떡해요?**

Asking your doctor

잠이 안 오면 어떡해요?

What if I can't sleep?

계속 열이 나면 어떡해요?

What if I keep having a fever?

알레르기가 있으면 어떡해요?

What if I have allergies?

아침에 일어날 수 없으면 어떡해요? What if I can't get up in the morning?

## Pronunciation Tip

**콧물** [곤물]

When the final consonant is pronounced as [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ] and the syllable that follows begins with ㄴ, ㄹ, the final consonant [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ] is pronounced as [ㅇ, ㄴ, ㄹ]. In the above example, the consonant ㅌ of 콧 is pronounced [ㄷ], but because the first sound ㄹ of 물 is connected to it, it is changed to [ㄴ]. Thus, 콧물 is pronounced as [곤물].

예 **넛물** [넛물] **햇님** [햇님]



track 118



Coffee Break

### Titles for doctors and nurses

In Korea, various titles are used. The title 선생님 is often called out of respect for the person, even if the actual job of the person is not related to teaching. Especially in the case of doctors and nurses working in hospitals, patients call them 의사 선생님 and 간호사 선생님. These titles are very common, so if you address them without adding 선생님, they may feel disrespected.

## ***K-Quarantine: Korea's medical services and medical insurance system***



South Korea's quarantine system drew the world's attention during the 2020 COVID-19 pandemic. It can be said that the state-led meticulous quarantine system showed its true value through fast and accurate diagnostic kits, widespread availability of hospital beds across the country, creative drive-through testing methods, and prompt disclosure of areas where patients contracted the virus.

Korea's high-quality medical service is another reason that contributed to Korea's quarantine success. In particular, the level of medical care in Korea is excellent enough to be recognized worldwide. Doctors are highly astounded individuals in Korea as they receive top scores in the fierce university entrance exam. In addition to general hospitals, there are many medical practitioners in each neighborhood, so people can choose hospitals easily due to easy access.

But, above all, National Health Insurance shined during the K-Quarantine. National Health Insurance is a public health insurance system that is considered a part of the social security system. Although insurance premiums vary according to income, National Health Insurance is a social security system that provides great benefits to the public. While operating state-led medical services even during the COVID-19 outbreak in 2020, the state bore the costs of the diagnosis and treatment, demonstrating the true nature of state-led medical services. Even if Koreans have mild symptoms such as a cold, National Health Insurance enables Koreans to access medical services or hospitals frequently. Senior citizens over the age of 65 pay less than 2,000 won even if they receive treatment at a local clinic. Not only Koreans, but also foreigners who stay for more than 6 months can join the National Health Insurance system.





Scene **18**

At a clothes store

Asking for other clothes

옷이 조금 크니까  
한 치수 작은 사이즈로 주세요.

The clothing is a little big, so could you give me one size smaller?



# Conversation



track 119



직원 어서 오세요. 뭐 찾으세요?

메이 노란색 바지 좀 보여 주세요.

직원 여기 있어요.

메이 이거 입어 볼 수 있어요?

직원 그럼요. 이쪽으로 오세요.  
(After trying it on) 마음에 드세요?

메이 디자인이 마음에 들어요.  
그런데 옷이 조금 크니까 한 치수 작은 사이즈로  
주세요.

직원 알겠습니다.

Employee Come in. What are you looking for?

Mei Please, show me your yellow pants.

Employee Here you go.

Mei Can I try this on?

Employee Of course. Please, come this way.  
(After trying it on)  
Do you like it?

Mei I like the design.  
However, the clothing is a little big, so could you give me one size smaller?

Employee OK.

▶ **New Vocabulary**

- 뭐 what
- 찾다 to look for
- 흰색 white
- 바지 pants
- 입다 to wear
- 보다 to look
- 마음에 들다 to like something
- 옷 clothing
- 크다 to be large
- 치수 size, measurement
- 작다 to be small
- 사이즈 size

▶ **New Expressions**

- 뭐 찾으세요?  
What are you looking for?
- 이거 입어 볼 수 있어요?  
Can I try this on?
- 마음에 드세요? Do you like it?
- 디자인이 마음에 들어요.  
I like the design.
- 한 치수 작은 사이즈로 주세요.  
I would like this one size smaller.

▶ **Close-Up**

**1 보다**  
(An auxiliary verb saying "try")

The verb 보 has the meaning of "look" as well as the meaning of "try" as an auxiliary predicate. It is usually used between verb stems in the form of -아/어 보다. In this conversation, 입어 볼 수 있어요 is used when asking an employee whether it's okay to try on something. Here, if you do not use the auxiliary predicate 보다 and write 입을 수 있어요, it has a completely different meaning of being able to wear clothes.

(Ex.) 패러글라이딩이 무서워요. 하지만 해 보고 싶어요.  
I am afraid of paragliding. But I want to try it.

**2 마음에 들다 and 좋아하다**  
(I like)

마음에 들다 is equivalent to "like" in English, and has a similar meaning to 좋아하다, but the usage is different. 마음에 들다 means that an object is received well at first sight, and is usually used for an object that is seen for the first time. For example, you can say 마음에 들다 if you find a design you like in a store or if you see someone you like on the street. On the other hand, 좋아하다 is an expression of liking a certain object. For example, when you are talking about a color or design you usually like, use 좋아하다 instead of 마음에 들다.

(Ex.) 이 카페에 처음 갔어요. 카페 분위기가 마음에 들었어요.  
I went to this cafe with a friend for the first time.  
I liked the atmosphere of the cafe.

(Ex.) 저는 음악을 좋아하고 제 친구는 영화를 좋아해요.  
I like music and my friend likes movies.

Flashback

• **Words for colors**

							
빨간색 red	파란색 blue	노란색 yellow	녹색 (초록색) green	검은색 (까만색) black	흰색 (하얀색) white	금색 golden	은색 silver
							
주황색 orange	하늘색 sky blue	베이지색 beige	연두색 yellow-green	분홍색 pink	갈색 brown	밤색 dark brown	회색 grey



## -(으)니까 Explaining reasons

-(으)니까 is used to indicate that the content of the first half of the sentence is the reason for the content of the second half of the sentence. -(으)니까 is a grammar pattern that connects two sentences that indicate the reason and result in one sentence as a connecting adverb, 그러니까. In Korean, unlike in English, the clause indicating the reason of -(으)니까 is always written before the result clause. -으니까 is used with verbs and adjectives. When the stem of a verb or an adjective ends in a vowel, -니까 is used, and when the stem ends with a consonant, -으니까 is used.

**오다**      내일 손님이 오니까 집을 청소하세요.  
Please clean the house, because guests will be coming tomorrow.

**같다**      가격이 같으니까 여기에 사인만 해 주세요.  
Since the prices are the same, please sign here.

When expressing the reason for an event or condition in the past, combine the past tense marker -았/었- with -(으)니까 as -았/었으니까.

**되다**      약속이 취소됐으니까 친구한테 전화해야 돼요.  
I need to call my friend because the appointment has been canceled.

**사다**      선물은 제가 샀으니까 신경 쓰지 마세요.  
You don't need to worry about it, because I already bought a present.

### ! Be careful!

-(으)니까 and -아/어서 have similar meanings in that they indicate a reason, but have different uses. When using the command -(으)세요 to express the reason for an order, instruction, request, or favor, and when making a suggestion or request to the other party, -아/어서 cannot be used. Thus, you have to use -(으)니까 in such cases.

[오다] 비가 오니까 우산을 갖고 가세요. (O)  
비가 와서 우산을 갖고 가세요. (X)  
Because it is raining, take an umbrella with you.

[먹다] 조금 전에 저녁을 먹었으니까 다음에 같이 식사합시다. (O)  
조금 전에 저녁을 먹어서 다음에 같이 식사합시다. (X)  
Because I had dinner a little while ago, why don't we eat together another time?

## Quiz Yourself !

**1~4** Complete the conversation by choosing the correct answer.

1. A 왜 피곤해요?

B \_\_\_\_\_ 피곤해요.

- ① 친구가 없으니까      ② 날씨가 좋으니까      ③ 어제 못 잤으니까

2. A 왜 빨리 가야 돼요?

B \_\_\_\_\_ 빨리 가야 돼요.

- ① 시간이 있으니까      ② 주말을 좋아하니까      ③ 약속에 늦었으니까

3. A 왜 오늘 만날 수 없어요?

B \_\_\_\_\_ 오늘 만날 수 없어요.

- ① 바쁘니까      ② 잤으니까      ③ 만나고 싶으니까

4. A 왜 밤에 커피를 마시면 안 돼요?

B \_\_\_\_\_ 밤에 커피를 마시면 안 돼요.

- ① 커피가 있으니까      ② 잘 수 없으니까      ③ 커피가 필요하니까

**5~8** Complete the sentence by using -(으)니까 with the correct answer from the following options.

여기는 비싸다

오늘은 다른 약속이 있다

아침에 길이 막히다

재미있는 영화를 하다

5. \_\_\_\_\_ 내일 일찍 출발하세요.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ 여기에서 사지 마세요.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ 다음에 식사할까요?

8. \_\_\_\_\_ 그 영화를 봅시다.

Answer p.279

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 120

## -(으)니까 -(으)세요

Explaining a reason

조금 비싸**니까** 싼 걸로 보여 주세요.

It's a little pricey, **so please**, show me a cheap one.

옷이 작**으니까** 큰 옷으로 주세요.

The clothes are small, **so please**, give me a larger one.

일주일 이 지나면 환불할 수 없**으니까** 일주일 안에 오세요.

Please, come within a week **as** refunds are not accepted after one week.

더**우니까** 에어컨을 켜 주세요.

It's hot, **so please**, turn on the air conditioner.

## -(으)니까 -아/어 보세요

A worker recommending something to a customer

이 색이 손님한테 잘 어울리**니까** 한번 입어 보세요.

This color suits you well, **so please**, give it a try.

이런 신발이 요즘 인기가 많**으니까** 한번 신어 보세요.

These shoes are very popular these days, **so please**, try them on.

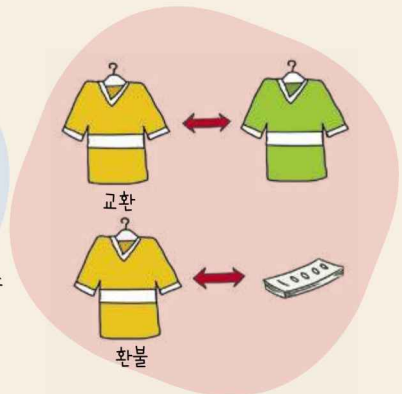
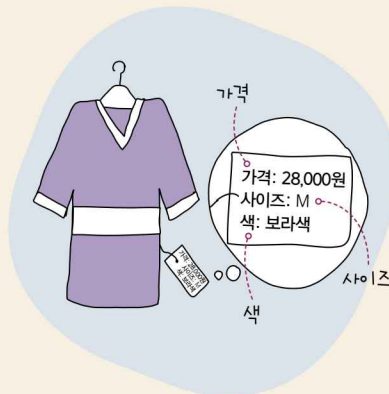
이게 인기가 많**으니까** 한번 써 보세요.

This is popular, **so please**, give it a try.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to clothing

- 가격 price
- 품질 quality
- 사이즈 (=크기) size
- 색 color
- 교환 exchange
- 환불 refund
- 반품 returned merchandise



# Conversation Rehearsal



track 121

## (Noun) 좀 보여 주세요

Requesting a product from a worker

뭐 찾으세요?

What are you looking for?

→ 바지 좀 보여 주세요.

→ Please, show me your pants.

→ 운동화 좀 보여 주세요.

→ Please, show me your sneakers.

→ 모자 좀 보여 주세요.

→ Please, show me your hats.

→ 스카프 좀 보여 주세요.

→ Please, show me your scarves.

## -아/어 볼 수 있어요?

Asking approval from a worker

바지를 입어 볼 수 있어요?

Can I try on the pants?

운동화를 신어 볼 수 있어요?

Can I try on these runners?

모자를 써 볼 수 있어요?

Can I try on a hat?

스카프를 해 볼 수 있어요?

Can I try on a scarf?

## Pronunciation Tip

### 흰색 [흰색]

The vowel ㅏ is pronounced as [의] when used alone. However, when a consonant is used in the first sound before ㅏ, the vowel ㅏ is pronounced as [이]. In the above example, when the consonant ㅎ appears before 의 as in 희, 희 is pronounced as [히].

예 희망 [희망] 띄어쓰기 [따어쓰기]



track 122



## Coffee Break

### Questions about service

When asking what kind of service is available, add 되다 to the service. For example, when buying an item, ask 교환돼요? (Can I exchange it?) to see if it can be exchanged later. Similarly, when asking if a refund is possible, you can ask, 환불돼요?. If you need a gift to be wrapped, ask 포장돼요?. If the store is out of stock but it is available by placing an order, you can ask, 배달돼요? (Do you deliver?)

### *The collective culture of Korean people*



Koreans are accustomed to group culture. Moreover, since Korea has a passive immigration policy, it is easy to find people with similar skin, similar clothes, and similar hairstyles. Office workers wear black, gray, or dark-colored suits. Although women are free to wear whatever they please, they wear similar clothes according to popular trends. Many people wear similar makeup because there are trendy styles. Middle and high school students wear school uniforms, daily life clothes, and sportswear in groups. Many people dye their hair, even older people, so it is rare for people to have gray hair. The roads in Korea are lined with black, gray, and white cars.

Not only that. More than 90% of Korean high school students go on to college. Because of Korea's focus on the importance of education, Korean students start attending academies around the age of ten. Since most of the students go to learning academies after school, there are also jokes that they must go to learning academies just to make friends. Women prepare for employment exams in their mid-20s, and men go to the military to get a job in their late 20s. At least before getting a job, it can be said that there is a relationship between the age of a person and the responsibilities that they carry.

Whether at school or work, Koreans feel comfortable belonging to a group. So, preference is given to people with a friendly personality who don't have a problem with joining a group. People who are too flashy are unique, but this is also the reason why they are not liked. Of course, the young generation of Korea in the 21st century values individuality. When the younger generation becomes the older generation, will they continue to value individuality?



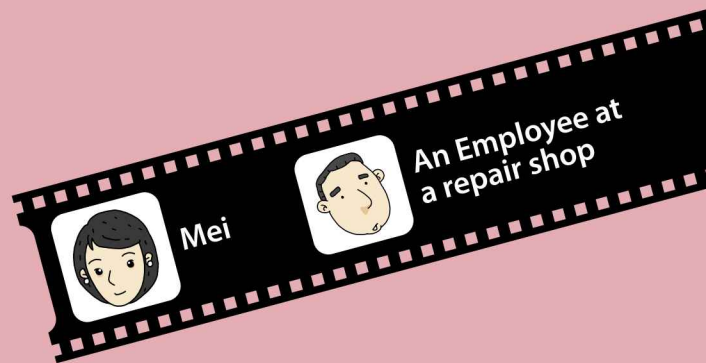
Scene **19**

At home

Explaining a problem

이따가 출발할 때 연락해 주세요.

Please contact me when he leaves later.





직원 여보세요.

메이 311호예요. 수도가 고장 나서 전화했어요.

직원 어떻게 고장 났어요? 자세히 말해 주세요.

메이 물이 안 나와요. 빨리 와 주세요.

직원 그런데 수리 기사가 지금 없어요.

메이 그래요? 많이 기다려야 돼요?

직원 아니요, 수리 기사가 곧 올 거예요.

메이 그럼, 이따가 출발할 때 연락해 주세요.

Employee Hello.

Mei This is unit 311. I called because the water isn't working.

Employee How did it break? Please, tell me in detail.

Mei No water comes out. Please, come quickly.

Employee But the repairman is not in right now.

Mei Really? Should I wait for him for a long time?

Employee No. The repairman should be coming soon.

Mei Then, please, contact me when he leaves later.

▶ **New Vocabulary**

- 호 unit
- 수도 tap
- 고장나다 to be broken
- 전화하다 to call
- 자세히 in detail
- 물 water
- 빨리 quickly
- 수리 기사 repairman
- 기다리다 to wait
- 곧 soon
- 이따가 later
- 출발하다 to depart, leave
- 연락하다 to contact

▶ **New Expressions**

- 어떻게 고장 났어요?  
How did it break?
- 자세히 말해 주세요.  
Please, tell me in detail.
- 물이 안 나와요. No water comes out.
- 빨리 와 주세요. Please, come quickly.
- 많이 기다려야 돼요?  
Should I wait for him for a long time?
- 곧 올 거예요.  
He should be coming soon.
- 이따가 출발할 때 연락해 주세요.  
Please, contact me when he leaves later.

▶ **Close-Up**

1 **나오다 and 나다**

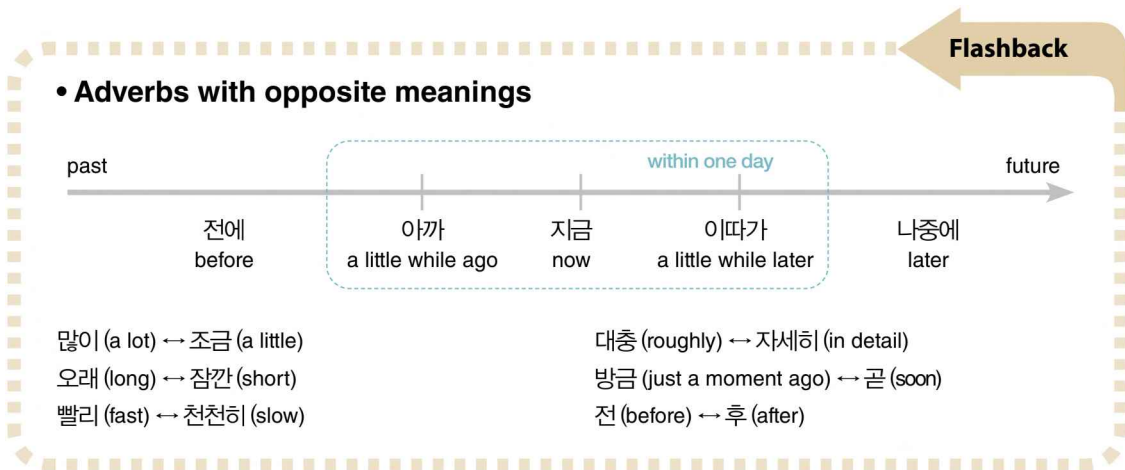
The verb 나오다 refers to something coming from the inside out through a clear passage. Usually, 나오다 is mainly used with the marker 에서, which indicates the source. In the conversation, the verb 나오다 is used to express water coming out of a faucet. On the other hand, the verb 나다 refers to something that rises from the surface.

- (Ex.) 지하철역 6번 출구에서 나오면 가게가 있어요.  
There is a shop if you **come out** of the subway station's exit 6.
- (Ex.) 벌써 수염이 났어요.  
I already **have** a beard.

2 **이따가 and 나중에**

The adverbs 이따가 and 나중에 are adverbs that indicate a later point in time based on the point of speaking, and correspond to the English word "later". However, 이따가 refers to a point in the future within the same day as the point in time being said, while 나중에 refers to a distant future with an undetermined point in time, such as 언젠가. In this conversation, 어느 정도 시간이 지난 후 (after some time has passed) falls within 오늘, so 이따가 is used instead of 나중에.

- (Ex.) 이따가 다시 전화하세요. 아마 회의가 1시간 후에 끝날 거예요.  
Call me again **later**. The meeting will probably be over in an hour.
- (Ex.) 우리 나중에 다시 만나요. 건강하세요.  
We'll see you **later**. Stay healthy.





## -(으)ㄹ 때 when

-(으)ㄹ 때 is used to talk about a moment when a certain event occurs simultaneously with another action or an ongoing condition. -(으)ㄹ 때 is used together with a verb stem or adjective stem. When the stem of a verb or an adjective ends in a vowel, -ㄹ 때 is used, and, -을 때 is used when it ends with a consonant.

- 쉬다 피곤할 때 쉬어야 해요. You need to take a rest when you are tired.
- 끄다 영화를 볼 때 핸드폰 전원을 끄세요. Turn off your cell phone when watching a movie.
- 찍다 사진을 찍을 때 웃는 게 좋아요. It is good to smile when taking pictures.
- ★ 듣다 친구 얘기를 들을 때 집중하세요. Pay attention when listening to your friend.
- ★ 춥다 날씨가 추울 때 스키 타러 가요. I go skiing when the weather is cold.

When stating an action or situation in the past, the past tense marker -았/었- is combined with -(으)ㄹ 때. In other words, -았/었을 때 is a combination of the past tense marker and -(으)ㄹ 때.

- 하다 옛날에 인도를 여행했을 때 그 친구를 만났어요.  
I met that friend when I was traveling in India a long time ago.
- 받다 남자 친구한테서 선물을 받았을 때 기분이 정말 좋았어요.  
It felt so good when I got a gift from my boyfriend.

### ! Be careful!

In the case of action verbs like 가다 and 오다, the meaning of the present tense and the meaning of the past tense are completely different. 갈 때 and 올 때 refer to the state of moving from one point to another, whereas 갔을 때 and 왔을 때 refer to the state in which movement from one point to another has been completed. Let's check the difference in meaning with the following example.

- Ex) 회사에 갈 때 보통 지하철을 타요.  
I usually take the subway to go to work. (When you are on the way from home and have not yet arrived at work)
- Ex) 회사에 갔을 때 8시 30분이었어요.  
It was 8:30 am when I went to work. (When you have already arrived at the company)

## Quiz Yourself !

**1~3** Complete the sentence by choosing the correct answer.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 전화하면 안 돼요.  
① 날씨가 나쁠 때            ② 운전할 때  
③ 친구가 없을 때            ④ 행복할 때
- \_\_\_\_\_ 이 케이크를 드세요.  
① 커피를 마실 때            ② 수영할 때  
③ 안경이 없을 때            ④ 화장실에 갈 때
- \_\_\_\_\_ 여행 갑시다.  
① 시간이 없을 때            ② 옷을 살 때  
③ 어려울 때                  ④ 날씨가 좋을 때

**4~6** Complete the conversation by using -(으)ㄹ 때 with the correct answer from the following options.

대학교에 다니다      회사 면접을 보다      가족이 보고 싶다      일이 많이 있다

- Ex.** A 언제 가족한테 전화해요?  
B 가족이 보고 싶을 때 가족한테 전화해요.
- A 언제 정장을 입어요?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ 때 정장을 입어요.
  - A 언제 집에 늦게 가요?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ 때 집에 늦게 가요.
  - A 언제 한국어 공부를 시작했어요?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ 때 한국어 공부를 시작했어요.

Answer p.279



## -(으)ㄴ 때 -아/어 주세요

Requesting something

저한테 연락할 때 이메일을 보내주세요.

Please, send an email **when** you want to contact me.

한국어로 얘기할 때 천천히 얘기해주세요.

Please, speak slowly **when** speaking in Korean.

사진을 찍을 때 “하나, 둘, 셋”이라고 말해 주세요.

Please, say “one, two, three” **when** taking pictures.

한국 음식을 만들 때 맵지 않게 해 주세요.

Please, try not to make it spicy **when** cooking Korean food.

## -(으)ㄴ 때 어떻게 했어요?/해야 돼요?

Asking a question

집을 구할 때 어떻게 했어요?

How did you go about **finding** a house?

길을 잃어버렸을 때 어떻게 했어요?

What did you do **when** you got lost?

문제가 생겼을 때 어떻게 해야 돼요?

What should I do if I have a **problem**?

한국어를 못 알아들을 때 어떻게 해야 돼요?

What should I do if I can't understand **Korean**?

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to repairs

수리하다 (= 고치다) to repair, fix

수리 기사 repairman

수리비 repair fee

무료 free of charge

유료 fee charging

청구서 bill

수리 기사



수리하다



유료 청구서

청구서

우리전자 서울서 용산구

남북 2111111

세부 내역

액정 수리비 (유료) 200,000원

배터리 교체비 (무료) 0원

부가세 20,000원

총합 220,000원

4617827576668189300126

무료

# Conversation Rehearsal



track 125

(time) **됐어요**

Saying how much

언제 고장 났어요?

When did it break?

→ 1시간쯤 됐어요.

→ It's been about an hour.

→ 3일 됐어요.

→ It's been three days.

→ 일주일 됐어요.

→ It's been a week.

(price) **쯤 돼요**

Talking about the cost of something

수리비가 얼마나 돼요?

How much does the repair fee cost?

→ 10만 원쯤 돼요.

→ About 100,000 won.

월세가 얼마나 돼요?

How much is your monthly rent?

→ 50만 원쯤 돼요.

→ About 500,000 won.

표 값이 얼마나 돼요?

How much is the ticket?

→ 20만 원쯤 돼요.

→ About 200,000 won.

## Pronunciation Tip

**올 거예요** [올 꺼예요]



track 126

When the initial sound syllable that comes after the relative clause -(으)ㄹ is ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ, it is pronounced as [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ]. In the example above, because of the consonant ㄹ, the ㄱ in 거예요 is pronounced as [ㄱ]. Therefore, 올 거예요 is pronounced as [올 꺼예요].

**예** 할 수 있어요 [할 수 이써요] 할게요 [할게요]



**Coffee Break**

### A simple problem situation expression

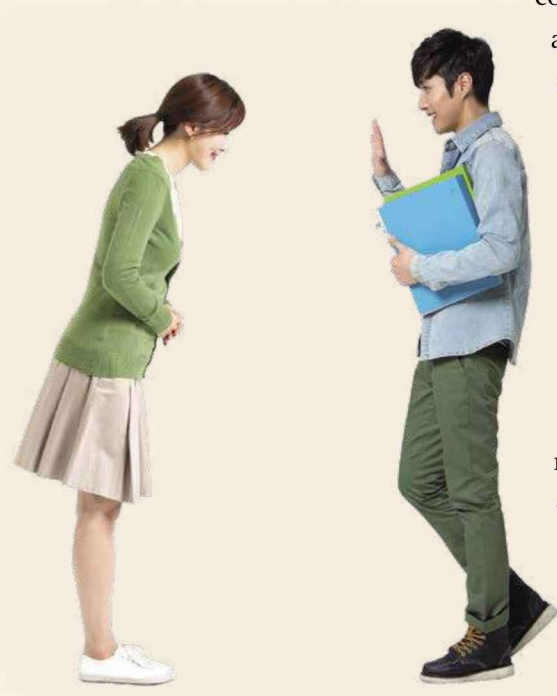
되다 is used to express that something works or has an effect. If there is no problem, use 돼요 and if there is a problem say 안 돼요. For example, if the washing machine breaks down, you can simply say, 세탁기가 안 돼요. Of course, you'll need to know a lot of vocabulary to describe how it's broken, but remember that when you want to express something is wrong, you can simply say 안 돼요.

### ***A Korean culture that emphasizes hierarchical order***

In Korea, there is a social atmosphere that emphasizes hierarchical order. You have to use respectful words for people who are older than you, and you can't call older people by their names. Even if that person is no more than 10 years older than you, only 3-4 months apart, or one year older, you should show respect. So, a person born in March cannot call a person who was born 3-4 months earlier and whose birth year is one year earlier by his/her name. You should regard the person as 형, 누나, 오빠, 언니.



The criterion for the dividing hierarchy is not limited to age. In school, seniors and juniors are ranked by the time in which they entered the school, and in the military by the number of soldiers who entered the army. For example, if you enter college late even if you are older, you must abide by the junior-senior hierarchical culture. In a company, age, school number, or military rank are not, in itself, regarded as important. The company ranks the top and bottom according to rank. In the end, Koreans clearly divide according to a hierarchy that is important to the community they belong to.



This emphasis on hierarchical order is due to a Confucian culture that remains in Korean society. This hierarchical culture has a positive aspect of minimizing strife among members of the community and strengthening community solidarity, but also has a negative aspect of having to be obedient to superiors unconditionally and even tolerating unreasonable demands from superiors.



# Scene 20

At the Lost-and-Found

Describing a lost item

## 가방을 잃어버렸는데 어떻게 해야 돼요?

I lost my bag, what should I do?





▶ **New Vocabulary**

- 무엇 what
- 돕다 to help
- 가방 bag
- 잃어버리다 to lose
- 어떤 what kind
- 파란색 blue
- 책 book
- 그런 that kind of
- 이름 name
- 연락처 contact information

▶ **New Expressions**

- 무엇을 도와 드릴까요?  
How may I help you?
- 어떻게 해야 돼요? What should I do?
- 어떤 가방이에요?  
What kind of bag is it?
- 가방 안에 뭐가 있어요?  
What's inside the bag?
- 여기에 이름하고 연락처를 써 주세요.  
Please, write your name and contact information here.
- 연락 드릴게요. We will contact you.

▶ **Close-Up**

1 어떤 (Asking about the type)

어떤 is used before a noun to ask about the characteristics or nature of a certain object. In some cases, 어떤 can be used interchangeably with 무슨, but there is a difference in meaning. 무슨 is used when asking about the kind of object, while 어떤 is used when asking about the characteristics of an object. In this conversation, 어떤 is used to request a description of the characteristics of the lost bag. If you ask using 무슨, you are asking about the type of bag – whether the bag is a backpack or purse.

- (Ex) 무슨 영화를 좋아해요? What kind of movie do you like?
- (Ex) 어떤 영화를 좋아해요? What movie do you like?

2 이런/그런/저런 (This kind of/that kind of)

이런/그런/저런 is used before a noun to express the state, shape, and nature of the object it is referring to. Like 이/그/저 learned in Scene 2, 이런/그런/저런 is also used depending on the distance between the speaker and the listener. 이런 is used when referring to the state of an object that is close to the speaker, and 저런 is used to refer to the state of an object that is far from both the speaker and the listener. 그런 is used to refer to the state of an object that is far from the speaker but close to the listener, and is also used to refer to the state of an object that is not visible from the listener's point of view.

Flashback

• **Frequently used question words**

- 뭐 (What): 뭐 좋아해요? What do you like?
- 무슨 (Which): 무슨 색을 찾으세요? Which color are you looking for?
- 어떤 (What kind): 어떤 사람이예요? What kind of person is he/she?
- 누구 (Who): 이분이 누구세요? Who is this person?
- 누가 (Who): 누가 사무실에 있어요? Who is in the office? (\*when "who" is used as the subject of the verb)
- 몇 (How many): 사람이 몇 명 있어요? How many people are there? (\*when counting numbers)
- 몇 (What): 전화번호가 몇 번이에요? What's your phone number?
- 언제 (When): 언제 수업이 시작해요? When does the class start?
- 어디 (Where): 어디에 살아요? Where do you live?
- 얼마 (How much): 이거 얼마예요? How much is this?
- 얼마나 (How long): 시간이 얼마나 걸려요? How long does it take?
- 얼마 동안 (For how long): 얼마 동안 한국어를 공부했어요? For how long have you studied Korean?
- 어떻게 (How): 어떻게 알았어요? How did you know?
- 왜 (Why): 왜 그렇게 생각해요? Why do you think like that?



## -(으)ㄴ/는데 Explaining a situation

-(으)ㄴ/는데 is used to explain the background or introduce a situation before asking, instructing, or making a suggestion to the other party. -(으)ㄴ/는데 is used with a verb or an adjective, and the form differs depending on whether it is a verb or an adjective. Whether the verb stem ends in a vowel or a consonant, -는데 is combined between the verb stems. When an adjective stem ends in a vowel, -ㄴ데 is used, and when an adjective stem ends in a consonant, -은데 is used.

- 하다** 친구가 식당을 **하는데** 같이 갑시다.  
My friend runs a restaurant. Let's go together.
- 찾다** 제가 지금 핸드폰을 **찾는데** 좀 도와주세요.  
Please help me. I'm looking for my phone right now.
- 아프다** 머리가 **아픈데** 혹시 약 있어요?  
I have a headache. Do you have any medicine by any chance?
- 좋다** 날씨가 **좋은데** 잠깐 밖에 나갈까요?  
The weather is nice, so shall we go outside for a while?

The stem ending syllable ㅁ of irregular verbs (for example **덥다**, **춥다**) is changed to **우** when combined with **-은데**.

- ★ **덥다** 날씨가 **더운데**, 커피 대신에 시원한 주스를 마실까요?  
The weather is hot. Would you like to drink some cool juice instead of coffee?

When the situation or background introduces an event or state in the past, the past tense marker **-았/었-** can be combined with **-는데**. Therefore, **-았/었는데** is used with the verb stem or adjective stem.

- 보다** 그 영화를 아직 못 **봤는데** 같이 봐요.  
I haven't seen that movie yet, let's watch it together.
- 하다** 어제 전화**했는데** 왜 전화 안 받았어요?  
I called you yesterday, but why didn't you pick up the phone?

## Quiz Yourself !

**1~3** Match the two sentences and complete the sentence by using -(으)ㄴ/는데.

- Ex.** 지금 사무실에 없어요 • ㉠ \_\_\_\_\_ 조금 이따가 전화해도 돼요?
1. 오늘 날씨가 안 좋아요. • ㉡ 지금 사무실에 없는데 메모 남기시겠어요?
2. 지금 식사하고 있어요. • ㉢ \_\_\_\_\_ 길을 좀 가르쳐 주세요.
3. 길을 잃어버렸어요. • ㉣ \_\_\_\_\_ 다음에 같이 가요.

**4~7** Complete the conversation by using -(으)ㄴ/는데 with the correct answer from the following options.

내일은 시간이 없다      한식이 먹고 싶다  
 식당에 갔다      얘기하려고 했다      숙제했다

- Ex.** A 숙제 주세요.  
 B 죄송합니다. 숙제했는데 안 가져왔어요.
4. A 왜 식사를 못 했어요?  
 B \_\_\_\_\_ 식당이 문을 안 열었어요.
5. A 내일 만날까요?  
 B 미안해요. \_\_\_\_\_ 다음 주에 만나요.
6. A 오늘 식사하러 어디에 갈까요?  
 B \_\_\_\_\_ 한식당에 가요!
7. A 마이클 씨한테 얘기했어요?  
 B 아니요, 어제 \_\_\_\_\_ 마이클 씨를 못 만났어요.

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 128

## -(으)ㄴ/는데 (question)

Asking a question to another person

신청서를 내야 되는데 어디에  
내야 돼요?

I need to submit an application form. Where  
should I submit it?

한국어를 잘 못하는데 어떻게  
공부해야 돼요?

I'm not good at Korean. How should I study?

핸드폰을 잃어버렸는데 어떻게  
해야 돼요?

I lost my phone. What should I do?

## (action) -(으)ㄴ/는데, (thoughts/feelings)

Talking about your experience to another person

산에 갔는데 경치가 정말  
아름다웠어요.

I went to the mountains, and the scenery was  
really beautiful.

한국 음식을 먹었는데 정말  
맛있었어요.

I ate Korean food, and it was really delicious.

한국어를 공부하고 있는데  
조금 어려워요.

I'm studying Korean, but it's a little difficult.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to one's belongings

- 신분증 identification card
- 지갑 wallet
- 현금 cash
- 서류 document
- 화장품 makeup
- 핸드폰 cell phone
- 이어폰 earphones



# Conversation Rehearsal



track 129

## 색 + 크기/재료 (Noun)

Describing a bag

어떤 가방이에요?

- 빨간색 작은 가방이에요.
- 갈색 큰 가방이에요.
- 검은색 가죽 가방이에요.
- 흰색 천 가방이에요.

What kind of bag is it?

- It's a **small red** bag.
- It's a **big brown** bag.
- It's a **black leather** bag.
- It's a **white fabric-based** bag.

## (Noun) 이/가 있어요

Talking about what are your belongings

가방 안에 뭐가 있어요?

- 핸드폰이 있어요.
- 핸드폰하고 여권이 있어요.
- 여권만 있어요.
- 아무것도 없어요.

What's inside your bag?

- My cell phone **is** in it.
- My cell phone and passport **are** in it.
- I **only have** my passport in it.
- **Nothing is** in it.

## Pronunciation Tip

### 연락처 [열락처]

ㄴ is pronounced as [ㄹ] before or after ㄹ. In the above example, the final consonant ㄴ of 연 is followed by ㄹ of 락, and the pronunciation of ㄴ is changed from [ㄴ] to [ㄹ] respectively. Therefore, 연락 is pronounced as [열락].

예 신라 [실라] 달나라 [달라라]



track 130



## Coffee Break

### Expressions that can be used in urgent situations

Everyone has a situation where they need help or assistance. Say 도와주세요 if you need help in Korean or if you want to ask someone for help when you are in trouble. In movies or TV shows, however, you may hear the words 살려 주세요 in life-threatening situations (for example, when someone is drowning or when someone is begging for their life from a criminal). If by chance, you offend a person, you can ask the offended to forgive you by saying, 한번만 봐 주세요.

### Useful services

#### 119 The center for reporting safety concerns



119 is an emergency telephone line that provides medical assistance to patients and transports them to hospitals in the case of a sudden accident, or rescues people in disasters such as fires. The 119 Center is an emergency telephone number used by all citizens of the country. You can dial 119 without an area code.

Emergency calls can be reported even if there is no service or an inactivated cell phone is available. In other words, it is possible to report as long as the cell phone has a battery. When a foreigner calls 119, the staff at the 119 Center calls an external interpreting agency to receive the report through a three-way call.

#### 112 The Center for Reporting Various Crimes

112 is the number to report various crimes. The 112 reports can be made by text as well as by phone, and the police respond to how the incident was handled by phone or text. Like 119, 112 is an emergency call, so you can dial 112 without an area code and file a report via an inactivated cell phone. When reporting to 112, the location of the incident cannot be arbitrarily tracked without clear evidence that the reporter is exposed to a crime. 112 should only be used to report crimes, and non-emergency reports such as non-criminal police complaints should be forwarded to 182.



#### 1345 The Information Center for Foreigners

1345 is an information center provided by the Ministry of Justice to provide consultation on civil complaints and administrative information necessary for foreigners residing in Korea to adjust to life in Korea. For example, when a foreigner residing in Korea uses an administrative agency, a third-party interpretation service is provided. The telephone consultation service is available in 20 languages. From anywhere in the country, if you dial 1345 without an area code and press the language you want, a consultation will be conducted in that language. Consultation hours are limited to working hours and language availability is limited at night.





# Chapter 6

## Traveling in Korea

Scene 21 At a hotel

Scene 22 At the ticket booth

Scene 23 At the travel destination

Scene 24 While talking to a friend



폴 스미스 (캐나다)  
Paul Smith (Canada)

# Chapter 6

Traveling in Korea

Scene **21**

At a hotel

Checking into a hotel

방을 예약했는데  
확인해 주시겠어요?

Could you please confirm the room that I reserved?





**폴** 방을 예약했는데 확인해 주시겠어요?

**직원** 성함이 어떻게 되세요?

**폴** 폴 스미스입니다.

**직원** 1205호입니다.  
그런데 12시부터 체크인이 가능합니다.

**폴** 그래요? 그럼, 지금 나가야 하는데 가방 좀 맡아 주시겠어요?

**직원** 알겠습니다.

**폴** 여기 가방 부탁드립니다.

**Paul** Could you please confirm the room that I reserved?

**Employee** What's your name?

**Paul** I'm Paul Smith.

**Employee** It's number 1205. But, check-in starts at noon.

**Paul** Really? I must leave now. Could you take care of my bag then?

**Employee** Okay.

**Paul** Here's the bag. I'll leave it in your care.

**New Vocabulary**

- 방 room
- 예약하다 to make a reservation
- 확인하다 to check, verify, confirm
- 성함 name
- 체크인 check-in
- 가능하다 to be possible
- 나가다 to go out
- 맡다 to take care of something
- 부탁하다 to make a request

**New Expressions**

- 예약을 확인해 주시겠어요?  
Could you please confirm my reservation?
- 성함이 어떻게 되세요?  
What's your name?
- 12시부터 체크인 가능합니다.  
Check-in starts at noon.
- 가방 좀 맡아 주시겠어요?  
Then could you take care of my bag?
- 부탁합니다. I'll leave it in your care.

**Close-Up**

**1 성함이 어떻게 되세요?**

(Asking for someone's name)

In Korean, when conveying respect, a verb or adjective is written with -(으)시-. Some nouns used frequently in daily life are replaced with other special nouns that convey respect. In this conversation, 성함 is the respectful equivalent of 이름. Thus, instead of asking 이름이 뭐예요?, respect is conveyed in the form of 성함이 어떻게 되세요?. In addition, 나이 is replaced with 연세, 생일 with 생신, and 밥 with 진지.

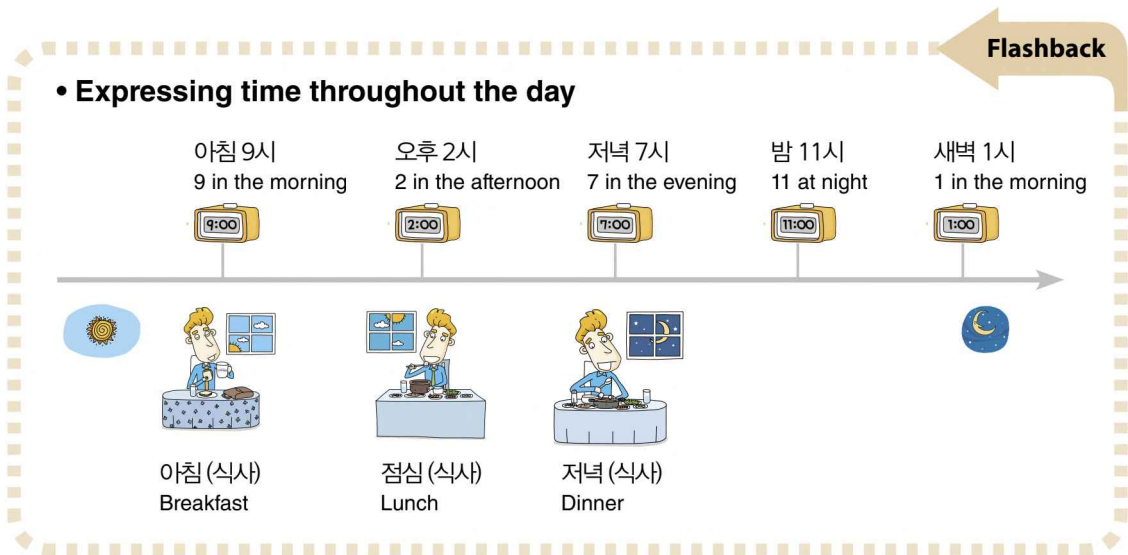
- (Ex.) 할머니, 진지 드셨어요?  
Grandma, did you eat?
- (Ex.) 할아버지, 연세가 어떻게 되세요?  
Grandpa, how old are you?

**2 부탁드립니다**

(Politely asking the other person)

When asking someone to do something formally, first say what you want to ask followed by 부탁드립니다. In the conversation, Paul asks the employee to take care of his bag and uses the expression 부탁드립니다. You can use 부탁드립니다 instead of 부탁드립니다 when wanting to be more polite. For example, when asking someone to call you, you can say 전화 부탁드립니다.

- (Ex.) 지금 메일을 보냈습니다. 확인 부탁드립니다.  
I've sent you an email now. I'd appreciate it if you check.





## -아/어 주시겠어요? Would/Could you please...?

-아/어 주시겠어요 is used to politely ask the other person to do something for you. -아/어 주시겠어요 has the same meaning as -아/어 주세요, which we learned in Scene 1, but -아/어 주시겠어요 is a more formal and more polite way of asking people to do something for you. For example, -아/어 주시겠어요 is used when asking a favor to someone you are meeting for the first time or making a difficult request to someone you know. -아/어 주시겠어요? is used with a verb, and the tone of your voice should be raised slightly towards the end of the sentence to make the question sound more polite.

- |     |                 |  |
|-----|-----------------|--|
| 말하다 | 다시 한번 말해 주시겠어요? | Could you please say it again?               |
| 말다  | 열쇠를 맡아 주시겠어요?   | Could you please keep this key in your care? |
| 들다  | 짐 좀 들어 주시겠어요?   | Could you please lift my luggage?            |

When asking the other person for an object rather than requesting an action, add 주시겠어요? after the object.

- |      |            |                                     |
|------|------------|-------------------------------------|
| noun | 영수증 주시겠어요? | Could you please give me a receipt? |
|------|------------|-------------------------------------|

When you receive a respectful request from someone, you can answer by granting the request with -아/어 드릴게요 or -아/어 드리겠습니다. -아/어 드릴게요 is a more friendly expression used in casual, less formal situations (such as meeting on the street) and -아/어 드리겠습니다 is used in formal situations (such as when an employee responds to a customer).

- |      |                        |  |
|------|------------------------|--|
| 연락하다 | A 확인되면 연락해 주시겠습니까?     | Can you please contact me upon confirmation? |
|      | B 네, 연락해 드리겠습니다.       | Yes, I'll contact you.                       |
| ★ 돕다 | A 길을 잃어버렸는데 좀 도와주시겠어요? | I've lost my way. Can you please help me?    |
|      | B 도와드릴게요.              | I'll help you.                               |

## Quiz Yourself !

**1~4** Change the following sentences by using -아/어 주시겠어요.

**Ex.** 다시 한번 말해 주세요. → 다시 한번 말해 주시겠어요?

1. 이 주소를 찾아 주세요. →
2. 조금 후에 연락해 주세요. →
3. 사진을 찍어 주세요. →
4. 여기에 사인해 주세요. →

**5~8** Connect the first half and second half.

- |                      |                       |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 5. 한국 친구가 없어요. •     | • ㉠ 열쇠를 맡아 주시겠어요?     |
| 6. 10분 후에 회의가 끝나요. • | • ㉡ 아침에 전화해 주시겠어요?    |
| 7. 지금 밖에 나가려고 해요. •  | • ㉢ 한국 사람을 소개해 주시겠어요? |
| 8. 아침 일찍 일어나야 돼요. •  | • ㉣ 조금 더 기다려 주시겠어요?   |

**9~12** Complete the conversation by using -아/어 주시겠어요.

9. A 연락처를 \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B 네, 알려 드릴게요.
10. A 내일 저녁으로 \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B 네, 예약해 드리겠습니다.
11. A 다른 것을 \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B 네, 보여 드릴게요.
12. A 이것 좀 \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
B 네, 치워 드리겠습니다.

Answer p.279

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 132

(Noun) **좀 -아/어 주시겠어요?**

Carefully asking a favor

짐 좀 들어 주시겠어요?

Could you please lift my luggage?

가방 좀 맡아 주시겠어요?

Could you please look after my bag?

택시 좀 불러 주시겠어요?

Could you please call a taxi for me?

7층 버튼 좀 눌러 주시겠어요?

Could you please press the 7th-floor button?

(Noun) **좀 더 주시겠어요?**

Asking for more objects

수건 좀 더 주시겠어요?

Could you please give me a towel?

반찬 좀 더 주시겠어요?

Could you please give me some more side dishes?

물 좀 더 주시겠어요?

Could you please give me some more water?

이거 좀 더 주시겠어요?

Could you please give me some more of this?

## Additional Vocabulary

• **Vocabulary related to accommodations**

- 체크인 (입실) check-in (entering the room)
- 체크아웃 (퇴실) check-out (leaving the room)
- 조식 포함 including breakfast
- 조식 제외 excluding breakfast
- 1인실 single room
- 2인실 double room
- 다인실 a room for multiple people





# Conversation Rehearsal



track 133

(Noun) **이/가 어떻게 되세요?**

When a worker is asking a customer for more information

성함이 어떻게 되세요?

What's your name?

직업이 어떻게 되세요?

What's your occupation?

연락처가 어떻게 되세요?

What's your contact information?

가족이 어떻게 되세요?

How many people are in your family?

(Request) **부탁합니다**

Asking another person a favor

언제요?

When?

→ 내일 부탁합니다.

→ Tomorrow, please.

몇 시요?

At what time?

→ 7시에 부탁합니다.

→ Seven o'clock, please.

어떤 거요?

Which one?

→ 커피 부탁합니다.

→ Coffee, please.

## Pronunciation Tip

**부탁합니다** [부타깝니다]



track 134

When the sound of the final consonant ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅈ is followed by an initial consonant ㅈ in the next syllable, their sounds are joined together and pronounced as [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅈ]. In the above example, when the final consonant ㄱ of 부탁 joins ㅈ, it is pronounced together as [ㄱ]. Also, when the consonant [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ] is followed by ㄴ, ㅁ, it is pronounced as [ㄱ, ㄴ, ㅁ]. In the above example, the consonant ㅂ is followed by ㄴ in 합니다 and pronounced together as [ㅁ]. Therefore, 부탁합니다 is pronounced as [부타깝니다].



## Coffee Break

### Expressing the duration of a trip with: 0박 0일

Use 0박 0일 when speaking about the duration of a trip. For example, if you depart on Monday, stay on Monday night and Tuesday night, and return on Wednesday, express this duration as 2박 3일 (3 days and 2 nights). In such cases, Sino-Korean numbers are used. Similarly, if you start on Monday, sleep three nights, and return on Thursday, you would say 3박 4일 (4 days and 3 nights). If you spend the night traveling by train or plane instead of staying at an accommodation during your trip, it is sometimes expressed as 무박 2일 (2 days without nights).

## ***Temple stay: Enjoy meditation at a Korean temple***



Although Buddhism is not Korea's state religion, it has historical significance to Koreans. These days, you can learn more about Buddhism through temple stay: a program that opens the temple to non-Buddhists. Temple stays are held at most of the country's representative temples. There is a day program and an overnight program where you can stay at the temple. The program is conducted in the same way for Koreans and foreigners, and since most of the programs are conducted by meditating or demonstrating, foreigners can participate without any burden.

You can make a reservation by applying online. Once you arrive at the temple, you change into a Buddhist robe and begin the temple stay according to the rules of Korean temples. Even if you participate as a family, you must abide by gender separation. Men and women are separated, and each group of the same sex is camped in a large room. All the lights in the temple go out at 9:30, so you must go to bed and get up around 3:30 or 4:00 in the morning to participate in the morning prayer service. Also, photography or video recording is prohibited on the grounds, and smoking or drinking is prohibited in the temple. In this way, a temple stay begins by calming individual desires and following 금기의 규율.

There are various programs facilitated by the temple stay program. For example, you can meditate and participate in The Pre-dawn Ceremonial Service and Zen Meditation, which are representative Buddhist rituals, and have a Buddhist meal through The Meal Offering. The Tea Ceremony, Lotus Lantern Making, Rubbings, Temple Tour, Community Work, Buddhist Martial Arts, Buddhist Bead Making, etc are various events you can also experience. Since the temple allows you to experience Korean Buddhism firsthand and it is worth trying if you are a foreigner in Korea.



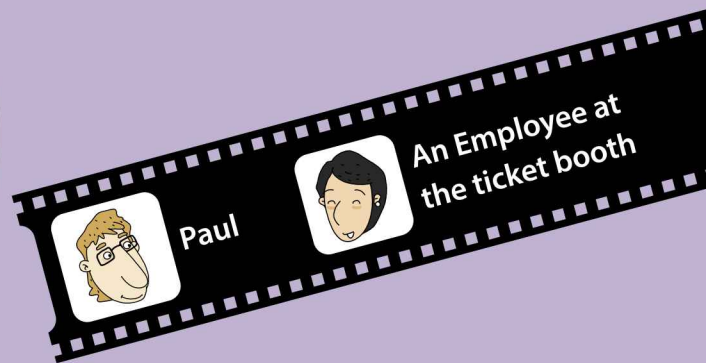
Scene **22**

At the ticket booth

Buying a ticket

돌아오는 배가 몇 시에 있어요?

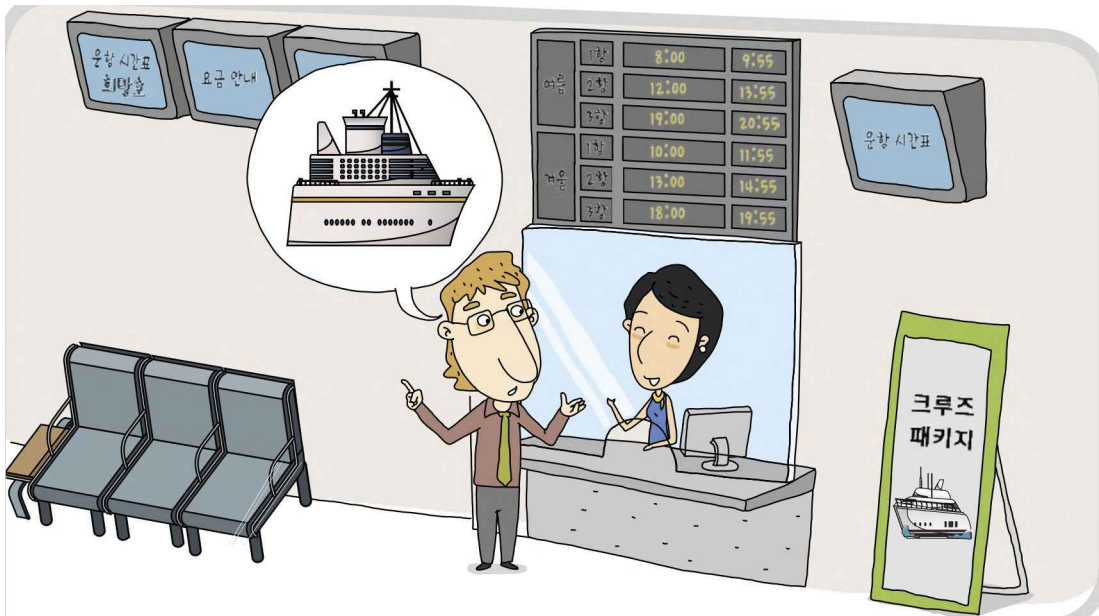
What time is the return ship?



# Conversation



track 135



폴 섬에 가는 배 표를 사고 싶어요.

직원 왕복으로 가실 거예요? 편도로 가실 거예요?

폴 왕복으로 주세요.

직원 몇 명 가실 거예요?

폴 한 명요. 얼마예요?

직원 왕복 표가 12,000원입니다.

폴 돌아오는 배가 몇 시에 있어요?

직원 저녁 6시에 있어요.

폴 감사합니다.

Paul I want to buy a ship ticket to the island.

Employee Roundtrip? Or one way?

Paul Roundtrip, please.

Employee For how many people?

Paul One person. How much is it?

Employee A roundtrip ticket costs 12,000 won.

Paul What time is the return ship?

Employee It's at 6 pm, dinner time.

Paul Thank you.

▶ **New Vocabulary**

- 섬 island
- 표 ticket
- 사다 to buy
- 왕복 roundtrip
- 편도 one way
- 명 counter for people
- 돌아오다 to return, come back
- 저녁 dinner time (lit. dinner)

▶ **New Expressions**

- 왕복으로 가실 거예요?  
Roundtrip?
- 편도로 가실 거예요?  
One way?
- 몇 명 가실 거예요?  
For how many people?
- 돌아오는 배가 몇 시에 있어요?  
What time is the return ship?

▶ **Close-Up**

1 **섬 and 도** (Words describing an island)

When referring to an island in Korean, it is sometimes called 섬 or read as 도. After the name, 섬 is added when referring to an island as a common noun and 도 is added when referring to an island by a proper noun (for example 제주도, 독도, etc.). When referring to a temple, after the name, 절 is added to common nouns and 사 is added to proper nouns (for example 조계사, 범어사, etc.).

(Ex.) 제가 어제 ‘울릉도’라는 섬에 갔다 왔어요.  
I went to an island called ‘울릉도’ yesterday.

2 **몇 명 and 몇 시** (Asking about numbers)

When asking about numbers, use 몇 to ask questions. However, when answering, depending on the meaning, the number is answered in native Korean numbers or Sino-Korean numbers. In this conversation, the question 몇 명 is used when asking about the number of people and, therefore, is answered with native Korean numbers. However, the question 몇 시 is used when asking about the time and, therefore, is answered with Sino-Korean numbers. When answering the question 몇 번, the focus of the question is important to take into account. If the question asks for the number of times, answer with native Korean words, and if the question asks for the number’s name, answer with Sino-Korean numbers.

- (Ex.) A 제주도 몇 번 갔어요?  
How many times have you been to Jeju Island?  
B 2(두)번 갔어요. I went two times.
- (Ex.) A 지금 몇 번 문제를 했어요?  
Which question did you do now?  
B 2(이)번 문제를 했어요. I did question number 2.

**Flashback**

• **Irregular verbs II: ㄹ Omission**

When a verb stem that ends in ㄹ (for example 알다, 살다, etc) is connected with an adjective stem that begins with ㄴ, ㄹ, ㅂ, ㅅ, the ㄹ is dropped in both cases.

When ㄹ is omitted				When ㄹ is not omitted			
살다: 살 + -니까	→ 사니까	멀다: 멀 + -니까	→ 머니까	살다: 살 + -아요	→ 살아요	멀다: 멀 + -어요	→ 멀어요
살다: 살 + -ㄹ 거예요	→ 살 거예요	멀다: 멀 + -ㄹ 거예요	→ 멀 거예요	살다: 살 + -고	→ 살고	멀다: 멀 + -고	→ 멀고
살다: 살 + -버니다	→ 삽니다	멀다: 멀 + -버니다	→ 멀니다	살다: 살 + -지만	→ 살지만	멀다: 멀 + -지만	→ 멀지만
살다: 살 + -세요	→ 사세요	멀다: 멀 + -세요	→ 머세요	살다: 살 + -면	→ 살면	멀다: 멀 + -면	→ 멀면



## 는 The noun modifier

The noun modifier **는** is used to explain nouns in more detail. Unlike in English, in Korean, the noun modifier must always be placed before the noun it modifies. When the content to be modified is in the same tense as the content of the main clause, for example, in the present tense, the noun modifier **는** is combined between the verb stems regardless of whether the verb stem ends in a vowel or a consonant.

- 가다** 제주도 **가는** 비행기 표를 사고 싶어요.  
I want to buy an airplane ticket for Jeju Island (lit. that goes to Jeju island).
- 좋아하다** 비빔밥은 제가 제일 **좋아하는** 음식이에요.  
Bibimbap is the food that I like the most.
- 있다** 정원이 **있는** 집에 살고 싶어요.  
I want to live in a house that has a garden.
- 먹다** 매일 아침을 **먹는** 사람이 건강해요.  
Those who eat breakfast every day are healthy.
- 웃다** 저는 잘 **웃는** 사람을 좋아해요.  
I like a person who smiles often.

**ㄹ** is dropped when the final syllable of the verb stem ends with **ㄹ** (for example **살다, 알다**) as the final syllable of the verb becomes **ㄴ**.

- ★ **살다** 지금 **사는** 곳이 명동이에요.  
The place where I live is Myeongdong.

**! Be careful!**

The following verb stems that end in [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ] change in pronunciation to [ㅇ, ㄴ, ㅁ] respectively when the first syllable ends in a final consonant and is followed by the initial consonant ㄴ in the next syllable.

[ㄱ] → [ㅇ]	[ㄷ] → [ㄴ]	[ㅂ] → [ㅁ]
먹 + 는 → [멍는]	들 + 는 → [든는]	입 + 는 → [임는]
닭 + 는 → [당는]	웃 + 는 → [운는]	돕 + 는 → [돔는]
읽 + 는 → [잉는]	찾 + 는 → [찬는]	줍 + 는 → [쭙는]

## Quiz Yourself !

**1~3** Look at the picture and complete the sentence by using -는.

1.



매일 \_\_\_\_\_ 친구가 진수예요.  
(전화하다)

2.



저는 1시에 \_\_\_\_\_ 비행기를 타요.  
(출발하다)

3.



폴 씨가 잘 \_\_\_\_\_ 음식이 김치찌개예요.  
(만들다)

**4~6** Complete the conversation by using -는 with the correct answer from the following options.

먹을 수 없다      명동에 가다      외국인이 좋아하다      옆에 앉아 있다

**Ex.** A 옆에 앉아 있는 사람이 누구예요?

B 존 씨예요.

4. A \_\_\_\_\_ 음식이 뭐예요?

B 삼계탕이에요.

5. A \_\_\_\_\_ 곳이 어디예요?

B 경복궁이에요.

6. A \_\_\_\_\_ 지하철이 몇 호선이에요?

B 4호선이에요.

Answer p.279

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 136

## -는 (Noun) 이/가 뭐예요/누구예요/어디예요/언제예요?

Describing a noun in detail

- 아침에 먹는 음식이 뭐예요? What is the meal **that** you eat for breakfast?
- 이 사진에서 웃고 있는 사람이 누구예요? Who is the person **that** is smiling in this photo?
- 매일 혼자 산책하는 곳이 어디예요? Where is the place **that** you go for a walk alone every day?
- 고향에서 친구가 오는 날이 언제예요? When is the day **that** the friend is coming from your hometown?

## 이거 -는 거예요?

Asking for a detailed explanation

- 이거 어떻게 먹는 거예요? By **what means** do you eat **this**?
- 이거 어떻게 하는 거예요? By **what means** do you do **this**?
- 이거 뭘로 만드는 거예요? What is **this** being made with?
- 이거 뭘로 쓰는 거예요? What are you using **this** for?

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to expenses “비”

- 교통비 transportation expense
- 식비 food expense
- 숙박비 lodging expense

### • Vocabulary related to the expenditure “금”

- 상금 prize money
- 등록금 tuition
- 장학금 scholarship

### • Vocabulary related to fares “료”

- 입장료 entrance fee
- 이용료 usage fee
- 수수료 fees

### • Vocabulary related to money “돈”

- 용돈 pocket money
- 세뱃돈 New Year's money





# Conversation Rehearsal



track 137

(Noun) **(이)나** (Noun)

Talking about choices

어떻게 가요?

→ 비행기나 배로 가요.

뭐 마셔요?

→ 커피나 주스를 마셔요.

뭐 먹어요?

→ 김밥이나 샌드위치를 먹어요.

How do you get there?

→ I go by plane or ship.

What can you drink?

→ I can drink coffee or juice.

What can you eat?

→ I can eat gimbap or sandwiches.

**-(으)면 어떻게 해요?**

Asking about if anything should happen

사고가 나면 어떻게 해요?

What do I do if I have an accident?

현금이 없으면 어떻게 해요?

What do I do if I don't have cash?

날씨가 안 좋으면 어떻게 해요?

What do I do if the weather is bad?

한국어를 못 알아들으면 어떻게 해요?

What do I do if I can't understand Korean?

## Pronunciation Tip

몇 명 [면 명] / 몇 개 [면 개] / 몇 호실 [머 토실]



track 138

Since all consonants that end with ㄷ, ㅌ, ㅈ, ㅊ, ㅍ, ㅎ are pronounced as [ㄷ], 몇 is pronounced as [면]. In 몇 명, when the consonant [ㄷ] of 몇, if followed by the ㅇ of 명, [ㄷ] changes to [ㄴ], and is pronounced as [면 명]. When saying 몇 개, the ㄷ is changed to [ㄱ] and is pronounced as [면 개] because of the consonant [ㄷ] of [면] in 몇. In 몇 호실, the consonant [ㄷ] of 몇 is followed by the syllable ㅎ and changes to [ㅌ]. Thus, 몇 호실 is pronounced as [머 토실].



## Coffee Break

### When asking about the first service and the last service

When traveling, it is necessary to check the 첫차 and 막차 times for transportation means such as buses, subways, and trains. So, when buying a ticket, ask 첫차가 몇 시예요?. Alternatively, you can check the time by asking 막차가 몇 시예요?. On the other hand, for ships or airplanes, the first operation on that day is not referred to as the 첫차, but rather as 첫배, 첫 비행기. However, remember that we do not say that the last flight is 막차, but instead 마지막 배, 마지막 비행기.

## Korea's topography



Korea is a peninsula bordered on three sides by the sea (the East Sea, the South Sea, and the West Sea). The East Sea is connected to the Pacific Ocean, so the water is deep and the coastline is calm, so you can enjoy the cool sea and sunrise. On the other hand, the South Sea and West Sea are shallower than the East Sea and have many islands, so they have complex coastlines. In particular, the southern coast

boasts of unexplored scenery as it is made up of thousands of small islands to the extent that it has been called '다도해 (a sea of many islands)'. The West Sea has the world's largest tidal-flat ecosystem due to tidal differences and its shallow water depth. Apart from Chungcheongbuk-do, all regions in Korea have access to the sea and many Korean foods use seafood.

Korea also has many mountains. It is said that about 70% of the Korean peninsula is composed of mountainous regions, so there are more mountainous areas than plains. High mountains are located in the north of the Korean Peninsula and low mountains are located in the south. The Taebaek Mountains stretch long from the north to the south of the Korean Peninsula, and the Taebaek Mountains are skewed to the east of the Korean Peninsula, forming a topography that is high in the east and low in the west. Mountains are easy to find in most areas of Korea. For example, there are 26 mountains in Seoul, most of which are low at 250-300m, but there are relatively high mountains of 700-900m among them. There are many people who enjoy mountaineering in Korea. If you go to the entrance of the mountain by a subway station in Seoul, you can easily find people wearing mountain climbing clothes on the subway on weekends.



Due to the geographical characteristics of Korea, there are many mountainous areas, so the population density of flat land where people can live is high. Moreover, the population density of the metropolitan area is very high, with about 50% of the Korean population concentrated in the metropolitan area in Seoul. In fact, although Seoul is quite large as a city, the population density of Seoul is 8 times that of New York and 3 times that of Tokyo due to population concentration.



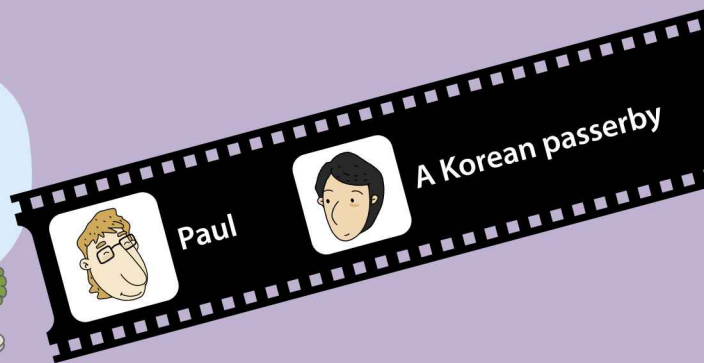
Scene **23**

At the travel destination

Receiving must-eat restaurant recommendations

‘바다’ 식당에 가 보세요.

Go to the restaurant ‘Bada’.





**폴** 저……, 이 근처에 맛집 있어요?  
**한국인** 맛집요? 무슨 음식을 좋아하세요?  
**폴** 저는 한국 음식 다 좋아해요.  
**한국인** 그럼, '바다' 식당에 가 보세요.  
거기 해산물 요리가 진짜 맛있어요.  
**폴** 여기에서 멀어요?  
**한국인** 아니요, 가까워요.  
지도로 식당 위치를 알려 드릴게요.

**Paul** Excuse me, is there a must-eat restaurant in this vicinity?  
**Korean** A must-eat restaurant? What kind of food do you like?  
**Paul** I like all Korean food.  
**Korean** Go to the restaurant 'Bada'. The seafood dishes there are really tasty.  
**Paul** Is it far from here?  
**Korean** No, it is close by. I will show you the location of the restaurant on the map.

▶ **New Vocabulary**

- 맛집 a must-eat restaurant
- 좋아하다 to like
- 다 all
- 식당 restaurant
- 해산물 seafood
- 요리 dishes
- 진짜 really
- 맛있다 to be tasty
- 에서 from
- 멀다 to be far
- 가깝다 to be close
- 지도 map
- 위치 location
- 알리다 to let somebody know

▶ **New Expressions**

- 이 근처에 맛집 있어요?  
Is there a must-eat restaurant in this vicinity?
- 저는 한국 음식 다 좋아해요.  
I like all Korean food.
- 여기에서 멀어요? Is it far from here?

▶ **Close-Up**

1 **The adverb 다** (The adverb meaning “all”)

The adverb **다** means “all” in English and modifies verbs or adjectives. In this conversation, **다** is a modification of the verb 좋아하다. However, since **다** is an adverb, it cannot be used before a noun to modify a noun. Therefore, when modifying a noun, **모든** should be used in place of **다** to convey the meaning of “all”.

- (Ex.) 갈비, 불고기, 삼겹살이 **다** 맛있어요.  
Galbi, bulgogi, and samgyeopsal are **all** delicious.
- (Ex.) **모든** 음식이 안 매워요. **All** of the food is not spicy.

2 **-아/어 드릴게요** (Expressing an offer)

-아/어 드릴게요 is used when you are doing something for a person with whom you need to use an honorific expression. -아/어 드릴게요 is mainly used when answering a request or requesting someone to do something. In this conversation, the passerby used 알려 드릴게요 to politely show the location of the restaurant on a map to Paul, who inquired about the location of the restaurant. If this was a dialogue between friends, there would be no need to speak in a polite manner. Thus, -아/어 줄게요 is used between friends.

- (Ex.) A 내일 책을 **갖다드릴게요.** (= 갖다줄게요)  
I'll **bring** you a book tomorrow.
- B 감사합니다. Thank you.



• **Irregular verbs III: Omission of ㄷ and ㅂ**

1. **The omission of ㄷ**

When irregular verbs with a stem ending in ㄷ (for example 듣다, 걷다, etc.) are combined with a verb tense ending that begins with a vowel (for example 아/어요, -은, etc.), the ㄷ is changed to ㄹ. However, if a regular verb with a stem that ends with ㄷ (for example 달다, 받다, etc.) is combined with a vowel ending, the stem ending syllable ㄷ does not change.

2. **The omission of ㅂ**

When an irregular verb stem (for example 줍다, 굶다, etc.) or an irregular adjective stem (for example 덥다, 쉽다, etc.) ends in ㅂ, this ㅂ becomes ㅍ when the verb tense ending begins with a vowel (for example -아/어요, -은, etc.). However, even if a regular verb with a stem ending in ㅂ (for example 입다, 씌다, etc.) or a regular adjective stem (for example 줍다) is combined with a verb tense ending that begins with a vowel, the ㅂ stem ending syllable does not change.

	Irregular verb	Regular verb
ㄷ	듣다: 듣 + -어요 → 들 + -어요 → 들어요 (Ex.) 매일 음악을 들어요. I listen to music every day.	받다: 받 + -아요 → 받아요 (Ex.) 친구한테서 선물을 받아요. I receive a gift from a friend.
ㅂ	쉽다: 쉽 + -어요 → 쉬우 + -어요 → 쉬워요 (Ex.) 이번 숙제가 쉬워요. The homework this time is easy.	입다: 입 + -어요 → 입어요 (Ex.) 진수는 매일 티셔츠를 입어요. I wear pants every day.



## -아/어 보세요 You should...

-아/어 보세요 is a sentence form used with a verb to invite, recommend, suggest, or advise the other person to try an action. The verb 하다 is used as 해 보세요. When a verb stem ends with a vowel ㅏ or ㅑ, -아 보세요, and -어 보세요 is added to the stem.

- 운동하다** 매일 30분씩 운동해 **보세요**. 건강이 좋아질 거예요.  
 You should exercise for 30 minutes every day. Your health will improve.
- 가다** 제주도에 꼭 **가 보세요**. 경치가 정말 좋아요.  
 Be sure to visit Jeju Island. The scenery is really nice.
- 찾다** 인터넷에서 정보를 **찾아보세요**. 쉽게 찾을 수 있어요.  
 You should try to search for information on the Internet. It's easy to find.
- 먹다** 이 떡을 한번 **먹어 보세요**. 정말 맛있어요.  
 You should try this rice cake. It's really tasty.

When the verb 보다 is combined with -아/어 보세요, it is used as 보세요 instead of 봐 보세요.

- ★ 보다** 이 영화를 한번 **보세요**. 진짜 재미있어요.  
 You should view this movie. It's really fun.

When answering a recommendation or suggestion with -아/어 보세요, use -아/어 볼게요 to indicate that you want to try it.

- 마시다** A 이 차가 진짜 맛있어요. 한번 **마셔 보세요**.  
 This tea is really delicious. You should try it.

B 네, **마셔 볼게요**. Yes, I'll try.
- 읽다** A 이 책이 진짜 재미있어요. 한번 **읽어 보세요**.  
 This book is really enjoyable. You should read it.

B **알겠어요. 읽어 볼게요**. Alright. I'll read it.

## Quiz Yourself !

**1~4** Complete the sentences by using -아/어 보세요.

1. 이 식당에 한번 \_\_\_\_\_ . 음식이 맛있어요.  
(가다)
2. 이 옷을 한번 \_\_\_\_\_ . 옷이 진짜 멋있어요.  
(입다)
3. 친구 연락을 조금 더 \_\_\_\_\_ . 친구가 곧 연락할 거예요.  
(기다리다)
4. 이 음악을 한번 \_\_\_\_\_ . 노래 가사가 진짜 좋아요.  
(듣다)

**5~9** Complete the conversation by using -아/어 보세요.

5. A 케이블카를 \_\_\_\_\_ . 경치가 진짜 좋아요.  
B 네, 케이블카를 타 볼게요.
6. A 이 안경을 \_\_\_\_\_ . 진짜 잘 어울릴 거예요.  
B 알겠어요, 안경을 써 볼게요.
7. A 이 운동화를 \_\_\_\_\_ . 진짜 편해요.  
B 네, 한번 신어 볼게요.
8. A 김치를 \_\_\_\_\_ . 아마 재미있을 거예요.  
B 네, 김치를 만들어 볼게요.
9. A 매일 공원을 \_\_\_\_\_ . 그러면 기분도 좋아질 거예요.  
B 알겠어요. 걸어 볼게요.

Answer p.279

# Grammar Rehearsal



track 140

## (Noun)을/를 좋아하면 한번 -아/어 보세요

Recommending something

바다를 좋아하면 섬에 한번 가 보세요. If you like the sea, you should go to the island.

생선을 좋아하면 회를 한번 먹어 보세요. If you like fish, you should try sashimi.

커피를 좋아하면 이 커피를 한번 마셔 보세요. If you like coffee, you should try this coffee.

한국 음악을 좋아하면 이 음악을 한번 들어 보세요. If you like Korean music, you should listen to this song.

## 꼭 -아/어 보세요

Strongly recommending something

바닷가에 꼭 가 보세요. 진짜 좋아요. Be sure to go to the beach. It's really nice.

케이블카를 꼭 타 보세요. 진짜 편해요. Be sure to ride the cable car. It's really comfortable.

해산물을 꼭 먹어 보세요. 진짜 맛있어요. Be sure to try the seafood. It's really delicious.

김치를 꼭 만들어 보세요. 진짜 재미있어요. Be sure to make kimchi. It's really fun.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to accommodation

호텔 hotel  
게스트 하우스 guesthouse  
민박 B&B

### • Vocabulary related to transportation

비행기 airplane  
기차 train  
버스 bus

### • Vocabulary related to sights

유적지 historical sites  
관광지 tourist attractions

### • Vocabulary related to food

전통 음식 traditional food  
지역 음식 local food





## Conversation Rehearsal



track 141

### -(으)ㄹ 거예요

Talking about your expectations

맛있을 거예요.

It'll be delicious.

괜찮을 거예요.

It'll be fine.

재미있을 거예요.

It'll be fun.

문제 없을 거예요.

There'll be no problem.

### 제가 -아/어 드릴게요

Offering an act of goodwill to another person

한국어를 잘 못 써요.

I can't write Korean well.

→ 제가 써 드릴게요.

→ I'll write it for you.

가방이 너무 무거워요.

The bag is too heavy.

→ 제가 도와 드릴게요.

→ Let me help you.

사진을 보고 싶어요.

I want to see the pictures.

→ 제가 보여 드릴게요.

→ I'll show you.

이 문법을 잘 모르겠어요.

I'm not familiar with this grammar.

→ 제가 설명해 드릴게요.

→ Let me explain it.

### Pronunciation Tip

#### 맛집 [만집]

The ㅅ in 맛 is pronounced as [ㄷ]. When the final consonant [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ] is followed by an initial consonant ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ in the next syllable, the final consonant is pronounced as [ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅅ, ㅈ]. In the above example, the first consonant ㅅ of 집 is pronounced as [ㅈ] because of the [ㄷ] in 맛. Therefore, 맛집 is pronounced as [만집].

예) 밧줄 [받줄] 낮잠 [남잠] 꽃집 [곶집]



track 142

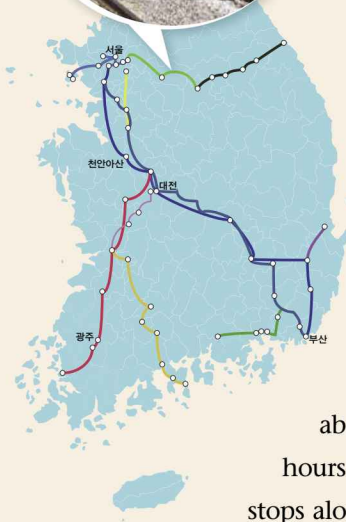


### Coffee Break

#### Taking pictures with Koreans

When taking photos with Koreans, say 김치 after 하나, 둘, 셋! and smile when taking a picture. This is a word that Koreans say a lot when taking pictures. When taking pictures with young Korean students, many Koreans use their index and middle fingers to make a "v" sign. Let's all say 김치~ and smile when taking a picture.

## Means of transportation when traveling domestically



Let's take a look at the means of transportation that Koreans mainly use when traveling in Korea without a vehicle.

First of all, airplanes are overwhelmingly used when going to and from Jeju Island. Of course, you can travel from the southern half of the Korean Peninsula to Jeju by boat, but Koreans mainly use airplanes. In fact, there are many airplane users when going to Jeju Island to the extent that the Seoul-Jeju route was selected as the route with the most aircraft among the world's air routes. As there are many passengers, competition among low-cost airlines is fierce, and there are often discounts on air tickets. The flight time from Seoul to Jeju is only about 50 minutes. To get to Jeju by plane from Seoul, you should go to Gimpo Airport.

Train is the fastest way to get to areas other than Jeju Island. High-speed trains such as KTX and SRT reach Busan in about 2 hours and 30 minutes from Seoul and to Yeosu in about 4 hours. In addition to high-speed trains, there are regular trains that make stops along the way, but it takes 4-5 hours to get to Busan. If you reserve a ticket in advance, you can pay less at a discounted rate. In Seoul, trains going east often use Cheongnyangni Station, and trains going south often use Seoul Station or Yongsan Station.

Express buses do not have the same discount as trains, but they have the advantage of being able to depart at any time. Even if you do not make a reservation in advance, you can take a bus that departs every 30 minutes if you go to the Express Bus Terminal. In addition, since buses go to areas that cannot be reached by planes or trains, Koreans love to use express buses to travel all over the country. As for the express bus, there are regular express bus and premium express bus services, and there is also a late-night premium express bus service that operates at night. There are two express bus terminals departing from Seoul. One is the Seoul Express Bus Terminal (Express Bus Terminal Station can be found on Subway Line 3), which is divided into the Gyeongbu Line to Gyeongsang-do and the Honam Line to Jeolla-do. The other is the Sangbong Express Bus Terminal (Gangbyeon Station can be found on Subway Line 2), which mainly handles routes to Gangwon-do.

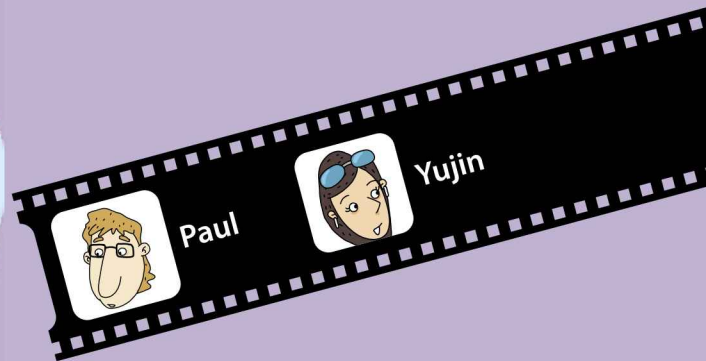
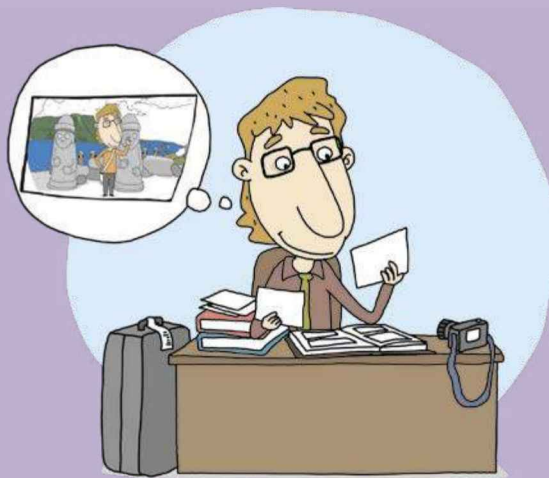
Scene **24**

**While talking to a friend**

Talking about travel experiences

# 한국에서 여행해 봤어요?

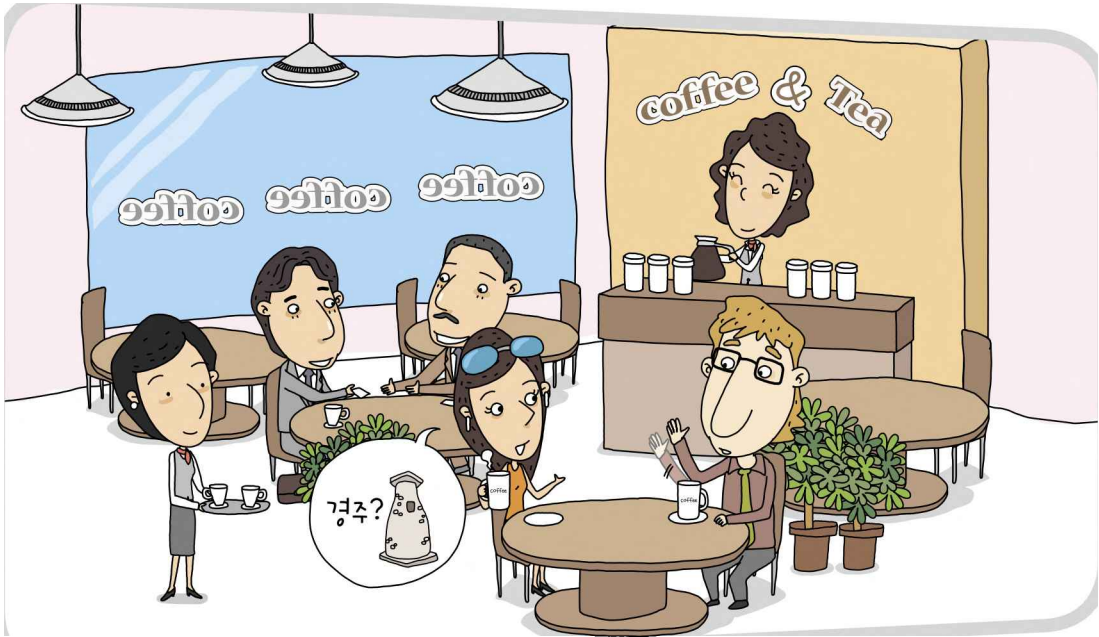
Have you traveled in Korea?



# Conversation



track 143



유진 한국에서 여행해 봤어요?

폴 네, 몇 번 여행해 봤어요.

유진 어디가 제일 좋았어요?

폴 제주도가 제일 좋았어요.

유진 그럼, 경주에 가 봤어요?

폴 아니요, 아직 못 가 봤어요.

유진 그래요? 나중에 꼭 가 보세요. 야경이 진짜 멋있어요.

폴 그럴게요.

Yujin Have you traveled in Korea?

Paul Yes, I've traveled a few times.

Yujin Where did you enjoy the best?

Paul Jeju Island was the best.

Yujin Then, have you been to Gyeongju?

Paul No, I haven't been there yet.

Yujin Really? Be sure to visit later. The night view is really nice.

Paul I will.

▶ **New Vocabulary**

- 한국 Korea
- 여행하다 to travel
- 몇 번 few times
- 어디가 where
- 제주도 Jeju Island
- 경주 Gyeongju
- 나중에 sometime in the future
- 꼭 definitely
- 야경 night view
- 멋있다 to be cool

▶ **New Expressions**

- 한국에서 여행해 봤어요?  
Have you traveled in Korea?
- 몇 번 여행해 봤어요.  
I've traveled a few times.
- 어디가 제일 좋았어요?  
Where did you enjoy the best?
- 아직 못 가 봤어요.  
I haven't been there yet.
- 나중에 꼭 가 보세요.  
Be sure to visit later.
- 그렇게요. I will.

▶ **Close-Up**

**1 몇**  
(Saying some)

몇 is used to convey an approximate of not many numbers. Therefore, 몇 번 indicates a small number of times, and 몇 명 indicates a small number of people. In Korean, 몇 is used with numbers, so 몇 번 is sometimes used in both question and answer forms.

- (Ex.) A 제주도 몇 번 갔어요?  
How many times have you been to Jeju Island?
- B 몇 번 갔어요. I've been there a few times.

**2 꼭**  
(The adverb)

The adverb 꼭 is used together with -(으)세요 or -아/어 보세요 to strongly make a request or recommendation. Use the adverb 한번 to soften the request or recommendation. In the case of negatives, 절대(로) is used instead of the adverb 꼭 with -지 마세요.

- (Ex.) 한국 음식을 꼭 배워 보세요. 진짜 재미있어요.  
You **should** learn how to cook Korean food. It's really fun.
- (Ex.) 한국 춤을 한번 배워 보세요. 어렵지만 재미있어요.  
You should learn Korean dance **once**. It's difficult but fun.
- (Ex.) 앞으로 절대 담배를 피우지 마세요. 담배가 몸에 안 좋아요.  
You should **never** smoke in the future. Cigarettes are bad for your body.

**Flashback**

• **Vocabulary expressing emotions**



기분이 좋다  
to feel good



기분이 나쁘다  
to feel bad



놀라다  
to feel surprised



아프다  
to feel sick



행복하다  
to feel happy



슬프다  
to feel sad



당황하다  
to feel embarrassed  
(because of  
an unexpected action)



졸리다  
to feel sleepy



화가나다  
to feel angry



무섭다  
to feel afraid



피곤하다  
to feel tired



부끄럽다  
to feel bashful



## -아/어 봤다 I have done...

-아/어 봤다 is used with a verb to convey that you have experienced or tried something. The verb 하다 is used as 해 봤다. When a verb stem ends with a vowel ㅏ or ㅑ, -아 봤다 is used and for all other cases, -어 봤다 is added to the stem.

- |    |                 |                                       |
|----|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| 하다 | A 한국 게임을 해 봤어요? | Have you tried playing a Korean game? |
|    | B 네, 전에 해 봤어요.  | Yes, I've tried one before.           |
| 먹다 | A 삼계탕을 먹어 봤어요?  | Have you tried Samgyetang?            |
|    | B 네, 먹어 봤어요.    | Yes, I ate it before.                 |

Use 안 to convey that you have no experience. However, to express that you want to experience something but haven't had the chance yet, use 못 with the adverb 아직.

- |    |   |                                   |
|----|---|-----------------------------------|
| 가다 | A 경주에 가 봤어요?  | Have you been to Gyeongju before? |
|    | B 아니요, 안 가 봤어요.<br>No, I haven't been. (When expressing only the fact that I did not go)  |                                   |
| 가다 | A 경주에 가 봤어요?  | Have you been to Gyeongju before? |
|    | B 아니요, 경주에 아직 못 가 봤어요.<br>I haven't been to Gyeongju yet. (When expressing that you want to go but have not experienced it yet) |                                   |

When expressing an experience or attempt with the verb 보다, use 봤어요 instead of 봐 봤어요.

- |      |                  |                                      |
|------|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| ★ 보다 | A 전에 한국 영화를 봤어요? | Have you seen a Korean movie before? |
|      | B 아니요, 아직 못 봤어요. | No, I haven't seen one yet.          |

## Quiz Yourself !

**1~3** Look at the picture and complete the conversation by using -아/어 봤다.

1. A 옷놀이를 \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B 네, 해 봤어요. 진짜 재미있었어요.



옷놀이

2. A 한복을 \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B 아니요, 못 입어 봤어요.



한복

3. A 구절판을 \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B 아니요, \_\_\_\_\_.



구절판

**4~6** Complete the conversation by choosing the correct answer from the following options.

- ㉠ 어땀어요?    ㉡ 부산에 한번 가 보세요.    ㉢ 부산에 가 봤어요?

- A 부산에 가 봤어요?  
 B 아니요, 못 가 봤어요. **4.** \_\_\_\_\_  
 A 네, 저는 지난주에 부산에 가 봤어요.  
 B **5.** \_\_\_\_\_  
 A 너무 재미있었어요.  
 B 저도 가고 싶어요.  
 A **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ 재미있을 거예요.

Answer p.279



## 처음 -아/어 봤어요

Talking about first experiences

이 노래를 처음 들어 봤어요.

I heard this song for the first time.

이곳에 처음 와 봤어요.

I came here for the first time.

이 음식을 처음 먹어 봤어요.

I tried this food for the first time.

이 책을 처음 읽어 봤어요.

I read this book for the first time.

## (number) 번 -아/어 봤어요

Talking about the number of experiences

제주도에 한 번 가 봤어요.

I've been to Jeju Island once.

자전거를 두 번 타 봤어요.

I've ridden a bike twice.

이 음식을 몇 번 먹어 봤어요.

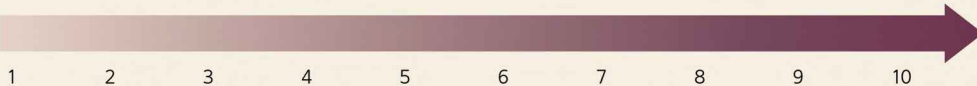
I've tried this food a few times.

이 음악을 몇 번 들어 봤어요.

I've listened to this music a few times.

## Additional Vocabulary

### • Vocabulary related to frequency



1. 한 번도 안 해 봤어요. I've never done it before.

2. 전혀 안 해요. I don't at all.

3. 한 번 해 봤어요. I did it once.

4. 거의 안 해요. I rarely do.

5. 몇 번 해 봤어요. I've done it a few times.

6. 가끔 해요. I do it from time to time.

7. 여러 번 해 봤어요. I've tried it several time.

8. 자주 해요. I do it often.

9. 많이 해 봤어요. I've done it a lot.

10. 항상 해요. I always do it.



# Conversation Rehearsal



track 145

## (Noun) 이/가 어때요/어땠어요?

Asking about feelings or impressions

음식이 어때요?

→ 진짜 맛있어요.

How's the food?

→ It's really delicious.

날씨가 어때요?

→ 진짜 좋아요.

How's the weather?

→ It's really nice.

숙소가 어땠어요?

→ 진짜 깨끗했어요.

How was the accommodation?

→ It was really clean.

## 이거 -지 않아요?

Seeking consent from another person

이거 맛있지 않아요?

Isn't this delicious?

이거 재미있지 않아요?

Isn't this fun?

이거 이상하지 않아요?

Isn't this strange?

이거 비슷하지 않아요?

Isn't this similar?

## Pronunciation Tip

### 제주 [제주]

Consonants ㄱ, ㄷ, ㅂ, ㅈ have different pronunciations depending on if they are the first syllable or between vowels. In the example 제주, the ㅈ of 제 is pronounced halfway between [ch] and [j]. On the other hand, the ㅈ in 주 is situated between two vowels (ㅏ and ㅓ) and is pronounced closer to [j].

예 기기 [기기] 도도 [도도] 부부 [부부]



track 146

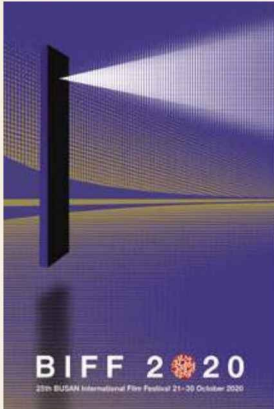


## Coffee Break

### Sentences with a common question and answer

Koreans often use unspecified expressions to avoid answers. In this case, words such as 뭐, 누구, 언제, 어디 are often used. In fact, in Korean, there are many cases where the question and answer are the same, but only the intonation is different because the interrogative verb has the same form as the unspecified thing. For example, you can answer the question "뭐 먹었어요?" with "뭐 먹었어요". To the question "언제 같이 가요?", we can answer "언제 같이 가요!".

## Famous Korean festivals

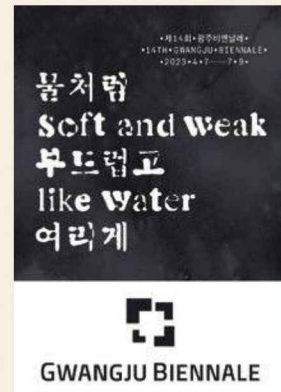


### 부산 국제 영화제 Busan International Film Festival

The Busan International Film Festival, which started in 1996, is held in early October every year for around two weeks. The Busan International Film Festival is an international film festival representing Asia and serves as a venue for Asian films to enter the global film market. The festival consists of many creative works of master directors and new directors. It is always crowded with many people, so it is better to reserve the movies you want to see through the 티켓박스(ticket box) website in advance or purchase a ticket on-site.

### 광주 비엔날레 Gwangju Biennale

The Gwangju Biennale is an international contemporary art exhibition representing Asia and is held every two years in Gwangju, Jeollanam-do for about two months from September to November. As well as works by established artists, pieces from event exhibitions, student works, and audience participation are major parts of the exhibition. You can request a docent (a guide with professional artistic knowledge) at the entrance of the exhibition hall and enjoy a more comfortable and informed viewing experience.



### 머드 축제 Mud Festival

The Mud Festival is a festival that uses mud from the tidal flats which extend along the west coast. The mud festival is usually held in July, the middle of summer, and at this time you can see young people burying mud and having fun. Both Koreans and foreigners actively participate in the mud festival and have enjoyable experiences. Koreans think mud is good for the skin, so they do not mind even if their skin becomes muddy and messy. In fact, famous K-beauty Korean cosmetic brands even have facial mask products made of mud.



# Appendix



**Grammar Chart**

**Answers**

**Index**

# Grammar Chart

**Adjectives** | Just as in English, there are verbs and adjectives in Korean. However, Korean adjectives act and look like verbs. Thus it's much easier to think of Korean as having two types of verbs: action verbs (to run, to do, to work, to think, etc.) and descriptive verbs (to be happy, to be sad, to be expensive, etc.). From here forward, these descriptive verbs will be identified as adjectives. These two types of verbs sometimes behave differently in certain grammar constructions, so you need to keep these two types in mind.

## Chapter 1

### Scene 01 -아/어 주세요 Could you please...?

Verbs	-아/어 주세요	Verbs	-아/어 주세요
하다 (to do)	(하+-어 주세요) 해 주세요	쓰다 (to write)	* (쓰+-어 주세요) 써 주세요
오다 (to come)	(오+-아 주세요) 와 주세요	모으다 (to gather)	* (모으+-아 주세요) 모아 주세요
사다 (to buy)	(사+-아 주세요) 사 주세요	누르다 (to press)	* (누르+-어 주세요) 눌러 주세요
찾다 (to find/look for)	(찾+-아 주세요) 찾아 주세요	듣다 (to listen)	* (듣+-어 주세요) 들어 주세요
읽다 (to read)	(읽+-어 주세요) 읽어 주세요	만들다 (to make)	(만들+-어 주세요) 만들어 주세요
기다리다 (to wait)	(기다리+-어 주세요) 기다려 주세요	굽다 (to roast)	* (굽+-어 주세요) 구워 주세요
외우다 (to memorize)	(외우+-어 주세요) 외워 주세요	붓다 (to pour)	* (붓+-어 주세요) 부어 주세요

### Scene 02 The imperative -(으)세요 and -지 마세요

Verbs	-(으)세요	-지 마세요
하다 (to do)	(하+-세요) 하세요	(하+-지 마세요) 하지 마세요
보다 (to look)	(보+-세요) 보세요	(보+-지 마세요) 보지 마세요
찾다 (to find/look for)	(찾+-으세요) 찾으세요	(찾+-지 마세요) 찾지 마세요
앉다 (to sit)	(앉+-으세요) 앉으세요	(앉+-지 마세요) 앉지 마세요
쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-세요) 쓰세요	(쓰+-지 마세요) 쓰지 마세요
부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-세요) 부르세요	(부르+-지 마세요) 부르지 마세요
듣다 (to listen)	* (듣+-으세요) 들으세요	(듣+-지 마세요) 듣지 마세요
만들다 (to make)	* (만들+-세요) 만드세요	(만들+-지 마세요) 만들지 마세요
굽다 (to roast)	* (굽+-으세요) 구우세요	(굽+-지 마세요) 굽지 마세요
붓다 (to pour)	* (붓+-으세요) 부으세요	(붓+-지 마세요) 붓지 마세요
먹다 (to eat)	* 드시다 → 드세요	(먹+-지 마세요) 먹지 마세요
자다 (to sleep)	* 주무시다 → 주무세요	(자+-지 마세요) 자지 마세요
있다 (to be/stay)	* 계시다 → 계세요	(있+-지 마세요) 있지 마세요

### Scene 03 Honorific -(으)세요

		-(으)세요 (Present)	-(으)셨어요 (Past)	-(으)실 거예요 (Future/guess)
Verbs	하다 (to do)	(하+-세요) 하세요	(하+-셨어요) 하셨어요	(하+-실 거예요) 하실 거예요
	보다 (to look)	(보+-세요) 보세요	(보+-셨어요) 보셨어요	(보+-실 거예요) 보실 거예요
	읽다 (to read)	(읽+-으세요) 읽으세요	(읽+-으셨어요) 읽으셨어요	(읽+-으실 거예요) 읽으실 거예요

Verbs	쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-세요) 쓰세요	(쓰+-셨어요) 쓰셨어요	(쓰+-실 거예요) 쓰실 거예요
	부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-세요) 부르세요	(부르+-셨어요) 부르셨어요	(부르+-실 거예요) 부르실 거예요
	듣다 (to listen)	* (듣+-으세요) 들으세요	* (듣+-으셨어요) 들으셨어요	* (듣+-으실 거예요) 들으실 거예요
	살다 (to live)	* (살+-세요) 사세요	* (살+-셨어요) 사셨어요	* (살+-실 거예요) 사실 거예요
	돕다 (to help)	* (돕+-으세요) 도우세요	* (돕+-으셨어요) 도우셨어요	* (돕+-실 거예요) 도우실 거예요
	낫다 (to be cured)	* (낫+-으세요) 나오세요	* (낫+-으셨어요) 나오셨어요	* (낫+-으실 거예요) 나오실 거예요
	먹다 (to eat)	* 드시다 → 드세요	* 드시다 → 드셨어요	* 드시다 → 드실 거예요
	자다 (to sleep)	* 주무시다 → 주무세요	* 주무시다 → 주무셨어요	* 주무시다 → 주무실 거예요
	있다 (to be)	* 계시다 → 계세요	* 계시다 → 계셨어요	* 계시다 → 계실 거예요
	있다 (to possess)	* 있으시다 → 있으세요	* 있으시다 → 있으셨어요	* 있으시다 → 있으실 거예요
Adjectives	피곤하다 (to be tired)	(피곤하+-세요) 피곤하세요	(피곤하+-셨어요) 피곤하셨습니다	(피곤하+-실 거예요) 피곤하실 거예요
	좋다 (to be good)	(좋+-으세요) 좋으세요	(좋+-으셨어요) 좋으셨어요	(좋+-으실 거예요) 좋으실 거예요
	바쁘다 (to be busy)	(바쁘+-세요) 바쁘세요	(바쁘+-셨어요) 바쁘셨습니다	(바쁘+-실 거예요) 바쁘실 거예요
	다르다 (to be different)	(다르+-세요) 다르세요	(다르+-셨어요) 다르셨습니다	(다르+-실 거예요) 다르실 거예요
	길다 (to be long)	* (길+-세요) 기세요	* (길+-셨어요) 기셨습니다	* (길+-실 거예요) 기실 거예요
	춥다 (to be cold)	* (춥+-으세요) 추우세요	* (춥+-으셨어요) 추우셨어요	* (춥+-으실 거예요) 추우실 거예요
Noun이다 (to be)	(이+-세요) 친구세요 선생님이세요	(이+-셨어요) 친구셨어요 선생님이셨어요	(이+-실 거예요) 친구실 거예요 선생님이실 거예요	

#### Scene 04 -(으)면 If...

Verbs	-(으)면	Adjectives	-(으)면
하다 (to do)	(하+-면) 하면	피곤하다 (to be tired)	(피곤하+-면) 피곤하면
보다 (to look)	(보+-면) 보면	좋다 (to be good)	(좋+-으면) 좋으면
기다리다 (to wait)	(기다리+-면) 기다리면	많다 (to be a lot)	(많+-으면) 많으면
먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-으면) 먹으면	맛있다 (to be delicious)	(맛있+-으면) 맛있으면
찾다 (to find, look for)	(찾+-으면) 찾으면	재미없다 (to be boring)	(재미있+-으면) 재미있으면
쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-면) 쓰면	아프다 (to be sick)	(아프+-면) 아프면
부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-면) 부르면	다르다 (to be different)	(다르+-면) 다르면
듣다 (to listen)	* (듣+-으면) 들으면	멀다 (to be far)	(멀+-면) 멀면
울다 (to cry)	(울+-면) 울면	길다 (to be long)	(길+-면) 길면
돕다 (to help)	* (돕+-으면) 도우면	쉽다 (to be easy)	* (쉽+-으면) 쉬우면
낫다 (to be cured)	* (낫+-으면) 나오면	Noun이다 (to be)	(이+-면) 친구면 가족이면

Chapter 2

Scene 05 -고 싶다 want to...

Verbs	-고 싶다	Verbs	-고 싶다
하다 (to do)	(하+-고 싶다) 하고 싶다	먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-고 싶다) 먹고 싶다
만나다 (to meet)	(만나+-고 싶다) 만나고 싶다	앉다 (to sit)	(앉+-고 싶다) 앉고 싶다
보다 (to look)	(보+-고 싶다) 보고 싶다	받다 (to receive)	(받+-고 싶다) 받고 싶다
마시다 (to drink)	(마시+-고 싶다) 마시고 싶다	듣다 (to listen)	(듣+-고 싶다) 듣고 싶다
배우다 (to learn)	(배우+-고 싶다) 배우고 싶다	알다 (to know)	(알+-고 싶다) 알고 싶다
쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-고 싶다) 쓰고 싶다	돕다 (to help)	(돕+-고 싶다) 돕고 싶다
부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-고 싶다) 부르고 싶다	낫다 (to be cured)	(낫+-고 싶다) 낫고 싶다

Scene 06 -(으)ㄴ 수 있다 can

Verbs	-(으)ㄴ 수 있다	Adjectives	-(으)ㄴ 수 있다
하다 (to do)	(하+-ㄴ 수 있다) 할 수 있다	편하다 (to be comfortable)	(편하+-ㄴ 수 있다) 편할 수 있다
보다 (to look)	(보+-ㄴ 수 있다) 볼 수 있다	좋다 (to be good)	(좋+-을 수 있다) 좋을 수 있다
먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-을 수 있다) 먹을 수 있다	많다 (to be a lot)	(많+-을 수 있다) 많을 수 있다
쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-ㄴ 수 있다) 쓸 수 있다	아프다 (to be sick)	(아프+-ㄴ 수 있다) 아플 수 있다
부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-ㄴ 수 있다) 부를 수 있다	다르다 (to be different)	(다르+-ㄴ 수 있다) 다를 수 있다
걷다 (to walk)	* (걷+-을 수 있다) 걸을 수 있다	맛있다 (to be delicious)	(맛있+-을 수 있다) 맛있을 수 있다
만들다 (to make)	* (만들+-ㄴ 수 있다) 만들 수 있다	멀다 (to be far)	* (멀+-ㄴ 수 있다) 멀 수 있다
굽다 (to roast)	* (굽+-을 수 있다) 구울 수 있다	춥다 (to be cold)	* (춥+-을 수 있다) 추울 수 있다
낫다 (to be cured)	* (낫+-을 수 있다) 나을 수 있다	Noun이다 (to be)	(이+-ㄴ 수 있다) Noun일 수 있다

Scene 07 -아/어야 되다 have to, must...

Verbs	-아/어야 되다	Adjectives	-아/어야 되다
하다 (to do)	(하+-어야 되다) 해야 되다	따뜻하다 (to be warm)	(따뜻하+-어야 되다) 따뜻해야 되다
보다 (to look)	(보+-아야 되다) 봐야 되다	싸다 (to be cheap)	(싸+-아야 되다) 싸야 되다
먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-어야 되다) 먹어야 되다	좋다 (to be good)	(좋+-아야 되다) 좋아야 되다
마시다 (to drink)	(마시+-어야 되다) 마셔야 되다	맛있다 (to be delicious)	(맛있+-어야 되다) 맛있어야 되다
배우다 (to learn)	(배우+-어야 되다) 배워야 되다	재미있다 (to be fun)	(재미있+-어야 되다) 재미있어야 되다
쓰다 (to write)	* (쓰+-어야 되다) 써야 되다	예쁘다 (to be pretty)	* (예쁘+-어야 되다) 예뻐야 되다
부르다 (to sing)	* (부르+-어야 되다) 불러야 되다	다르다 (to be different)	* (다르+-어야 되다) 달라야 되다
듣다 (to listen)	* (듣+-어야 되다) 들어야 되다	길다 (to be long)	(길+-어야 되다) 길어야 되다
알다 (to know)	(알+-아야 되다) 알아야 되다	쉽다 (to be easy)	* (쉽+-어야 되다) 쉬워야 되다
굽다 (to roast)	* (굽+-어야 되다) 구워야 되다	가볍다 (to be light)	* (가볍+-어야 되다) 가벼워야 되다
낫다 (to be cured)	* (낫+-아야 되다) 나아야 되다	Noun이다 (to be)	(이+-어야 되다) 친구여야 되다 가족이어야 되다

**Scene 08** -(으)ㄴ The noun modifier

Adjectives	-(으)ㄴ	Adjectives	-(으)ㄴ
싸다 (to be cheap)	(싸+-ㄴ) 싸	맛있다 (to be delicious)	(맛있+-는) 맛있는
피곤하다 (to be tired)	(피곤하+-ㄴ) 피곤한	재미없다 (to be boring)	(재미없+-는) 재미없는
바쁘다 (to be busy)	(바쁘+-ㄴ) 바쁜	길다 (to be long)	* (길+-ㄴ) 긴
다르다 (to be different)	(다르+-ㄴ) 다른	쉽다 (to be easy)	* (쉽+-은) 쉬운
좋다 (to be good)	(좋+-은) 좋은	어렵다 (to be difficult)	* (어렵+-은) 어려운
많다 (to be a lot)	(많+-은) 많은	Noun이다 (to be)	(이+-ㄴ) 친구인

**Chapter 3**

**Scene 09** -(으)ㄹ까요? Shall we ...?

Verbs	-(으)ㄹ까요?	Verbs	-(으)ㄹ까요?
하다 (to do)	(하+-ㄹ까요?) 할까요?	먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-을까요?) 먹을까요?
보다 (to look, see)	(보+-ㄹ까요?) 볼까요?	듣다 (to listen)	* (듣+-을까요?) 들을까요?
마시다 (to drink)	(마시+-ㄹ까요?) 마실까요?	살다 (to live)	* (살+-ㄹ까요?) 살까요?
쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-ㄹ까요?) 쓸까요?	돕다 (to help)	* (돕+-을까요?) 도울까요?
부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-ㄹ까요?) 부를까요?	붓다 (to pour)	* (붓+-을까요?) 부을까요?

**Scene 10** -(으)려고 하다 be going to...

Verbs	-아/어서	Verbs	-아/어서
하다 (to do)	(하+-려고 하다) 하려고 하다	먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-으려고 하다) 먹으려고 하다
가다 (to go)	(가+-려고 하다) 가려고 하다	찾다 (to find/look for)	(찾+-으려고 하다) 찾으려고 하다
보다 (to look)	(보+-려고 하다) 보려고 하다	듣다 (to listen)	* (듣+-으려고 하다) 들으려고 하다
마시다 (to drink)	(마시+-려고 하다) 마시려고 하다	살다 (to live)	(살+-려고 하다) 살려고 하다
배우다 (to learn)	(배우+-려고 하다) 배우려고 하다	만들다 (to make)	(만들+-려고 하다) 만들려고 하다
쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-려고 하다) 쓰려고 하다	돕다 (to help)	* (돕+-으려고 하다) 도우려고 하다
부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-려고 하다) 부르려고 하다	붓다 (to pour)	* (붓+-으려고 하다) 부으려고 하다

**Scene 11** -아/어서 because

Verbs	-아/어서	Adjectives	-아/어서
하다 (to do)	(하+-어서) 해서	피곤하다 (to be tired)	(피곤하+-어서) 피곤해서
보다 (to look)	(보+-아서) 봐서	싸다 (to be cheap)	(싸+-아서) 싸서
먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-어서) 먹어서	좋다 (to be good)	(좋+-아서) 좋아서
찾다 (to find)	(찾+-아서) 찾아서	맛있다 (to be delicious)	(맛있+-어서) 맛있어서
쓰다 (to write)	* (쓰+-어서) 써서	바쁘다 (to be busy)	* (바쁘+-아서) 바빠서
부르다 (to sing)	* (부르+-어서) 불러서	다르다 (to be different)	* (다르+-아서) 달라서
듣다 (to listen)	* (듣+-어서) 들어서	게으르다 (to be lazy)	* (게으르+-어서) 게을러서
알다 (to know)	(알+-아서) 알아서	멀다 (to be far)	(멀+-어서) 멀어서
굽다 (to roast)	* (굽+-어서) 구워서	맵다 (to be spicy)	* (맵+-어서) 매워서
붓다 (to swell)	* (붓+-어서) 부어서	Noun이다 (to be)	(이+-어서) 친구여서 가족이어서

**Scene 12** The formal form -(스)입니다

		- (스)입니다 (Present)	-았/었습니다 (Past)
Verbs	하다 (to do)	(하+-습니다) 합니다	(하+-었습니다) 했습니다
	먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-습니다) 먹습니다	(먹+-었습니다) 먹었습니다
	쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-습니다) 씁니다	* (쓰+-었습니다) 썼습니다
	부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-습니다) 부릅니다	* (부르+-었습니다) 불렀습니다
	듣다 (to listen)	(듣+-습니다) 듣습니다	* (듣+-었습니다) 들었습니다
	알다 (to know)	* (알+-습니다) 압니다	(알+-었습니다) 알았습니다
	붓다 (to swell)	(붓+-습니다) 붓습니다	* (붓+-었습니다) 부었습니다
Adjectives	편하다 (to be comfortable)	(편하+-습니다) 편합니다	(편하+-었습니다) 편했습니다
	좋다 (to be good)	(좋+-습니다) 좋습니다	(좋+-었습니다) 좋았습니다
	바쁘다 (to be busy)	(바쁘+-습니다) 바쁩니다	* (바쁘+-었습니다) 바빴습니다
	다르다 (to be different)	(다르+-습니다) 다릅니다	* (다르+-었습니다) 달랐습니다
	멀다 (to be far)	* (멀+-습니다) 멉니다	(멀+-었습니다) 멀었습니다
	어렵다 (to be difficult)	(어렵+-습니다) 어렵습니다	* (어렵+-었습니다) 어려웠습니다
	Noun이다 (to be)	(이+-습니다) 친구입니다 가족입니다	(이+-었습니다) 친구였습니다 가족이었습니다

**Chapter 4**

**Scene 13** The comparative 보다 더 and the superlative 제일, 가장

		더	제일, 가장
Adjectives	싸다 (to be cheap)	더 싸요	제일 싸요
	좋다 (to be good)	더 좋아요	제일 좋아요
	맛있다 (to be delicious)	더 맛있어요	제일 맛있어요
Verbs	좋아하다 (to like)	더 좋아해요	제일 좋아해요
	잘하다 (to do something well)	더 잘해요	제일 잘해요
	먹다 (to eat)	더 잘 먹어요	제일 잘 먹어요
	만들다 (to make)	더 잘 만들어요	제일 잘 만들어요

**Scene 14** Changing an adjective into an adverb -게

Adjectives	-게	Adjectives	-게
싸다 (to be cheap)	(싸+-게) 싸게	좋다 (to be good)	(좋+-게) 좋게
따뜻하다 (to be warm)	(따뜻하+-게) 따뜻하게	맛있다 (to be delicious)	(맛있+-게) 맛있게
예쁘다 (to be pretty)	(예쁘+-게) 예쁘게	짧다 (to be short)	(짧+-게) 짧게
바쁘다 (to be busy)	(바쁘+-게) 바쁘게	길다 (to be long)	(길+-게) 길게
다르다 (to be different)	(다르+-게) 다르게	쉽다 (to be easy)	(쉽+-게) 쉽게



**Scene 15** -지만 but

		-지만 (Present)	-았/었지만 (Past)
Verbs	하다 (to do)	(하+-지만) 하지만	(하+-었지만) 했지만
	먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-지만) 먹지만	(먹+-었지만) 먹었지만
	쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-지만) 쓰지만	* (쓰+-었지만) 썼지만
	부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-지만) 부르지만	* (부르+-었지만) 불렀지만
	듣다 (to listen)	(듣+-지만) 듣지만	* (듣+-었지만) 들었지만
	알다 (to know)	* (알+-지만) 알지만	(알+-었지만) 알았지만
	굽다 (to roast)	(굽+-지만) 굽지만	* (굽+-었지만) 구웠지만
	붓다 (to swell)	(붓+-지만) 붓지만	* (붓+-었지만) 부었지만
Adjectives	싸다 (to be cheap)	(싸+-지만) 싸지만	(싸+-었지만) 싸었지만
	좋다 (to be good)	(좋+-지만) 좋지만	(좋+-었지만) 좋았지만
	바쁘다 (to be busy)	(바쁘+-지만) 바쁘지만	* (바쁘+-었지만) 바빴지만
	다르다 (to be different)	(다르+-지만) 다르지만	* (다르+-었지만) 달랐지만
	멀다 (to be far)	* (멀+-지만) 멀지만	(멀+-었지만) 멀었지만
	어렵다 (to be difficult)	(어렵+-지만) 어렵지만	* (어렵+-었지만) 어려웠지만
	Noun이다 (to be)	(이+-지만) 친구지만 가족이지만	(이+-었지만) 친구였지만 가족이었지만

**Scene 16** Expressing intent: -겠- and -(으)ㄹ게요

Verbs	-겠- / -(으)ㄹ게요	Verbs	-겠- / -(으)ㄹ게요
하다 (to do)	(하+-겠-) 하겠다 (하+-ㄹ게요) 할게요	먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-겠-) 먹겠다 (먹+-을게요) 먹을게요
보다 (to look)	(보+-겠-) 보겠다 (보+-ㄹ게요) 볼게요	신다 (to put on)	(신+-겠-) 신겠다 (신+-을게요) 신을게요
마시다 (to drink)	(마시+-겠-) 마시겠다 (마시+-ㄹ게요) 마실게요	듣다 (to listen)	(듣+-겠-) 듣겠다 * (듣+-을게요) 들을게요
배우다 (to learn)	(배우+-겠-) 배우겠다 (배우+-ㄹ게요) 배울게요	만들다 (to make)	(만들+-겠-) 만들겠다 (만들+-ㄹ게요) 만들게요
쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-겠-) 쓰겠다 (쓰+-ㄹ게요) 쓸게요	굽다 (to roast)	(굽+-겠-) 굽겠다 * (굽+-을게요) 구울게요
부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-겠-) 부르겠다 (부르+-ㄹ게요) 부를게요	붓다 (to pour)	(붓+-겠-) 붓겠다 * (붓+-을게요) 부을게요

Chapter 5

Scene 17 -고 and

Verbs	-고	Adjectives	-고
하다 (to do)	(하+-고) 하고	싸다 (to be cheap)	(싸+-고) 싸고
보다 (to look)	(보+-고) 보고	좋다 (to be good)	(좋+-고) 좋고
먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-고) 먹고	재미있다 (to be fun)	(재미있+-고) 재미있고
쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-고) 쓰고	바쁘다 (to be busy)	(바쁘+-고) 바쁘고
부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-고) 부르고	다르다 (to be different)	(다르+-고) 다르고
듣다 (to listen)	(듣+-고) 듣고	멀다 (to be far)	(멀+-고) 멀고
살다 (to live)	(살+-고) 살고	길다 (to be long)	(길+-고) 길고
굽다 (to roast)	(굽+-고) 굽고	춥다 (to be cold)	(춥+-고) 춥고
붓다 (to swell)	(붓+-고) 붓고	Noun이다 (to be)	(이+-고) Noun이고

Scene 18 Explaining reasons -(으)니까

		-(으)니까(Present)	-았/었으니까(Past)
Verbs	하다 (to do)	(하+-니까) 하니까	(하+-었으니까) 했으니까
	먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-으니까) 먹으니까	(먹+-었으니까) 먹었으니까
	쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-니까) 쓰니까	* (쓰+-었으니까) 썼으니까
	부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-니까) 부르니까	* (부르+-었으니까) 불렀으니까
	듣다 (to listen)	* (듣+-으니까) 들으니까	* (듣+-었으니까) 들었으니까
	알다 (to know)	* (알+-니까) 아니까	(알+-았으니까) 알았으니까
	굽다 (to roast)	* (굽+-으니까) 구우니까	* (굽+-었으니까) 구웠으니까
	붓다 (to swell)	* (붓+-으니까) 부으니까	* (붓+-었으니까) 부었으니까
Adjectives	싸다 (to be cheap)	(싸+-니까) 싸니까	(싸+-았으니까) 싸았으니까
	좋다 (to be good)	(좋+-으니까) 좋으니까	(좋+-았으니까) 좋았으니까
	바쁘다 (to be busy)	(바쁘+-니까) 바쁘니까	* (바쁘+-았으니까) 바빴으니까
	다르다 (to be different)	(다르+-니까) 다르니까	* (다르+-았으니까) 달랐으니까
	멀다 (to be far)	* (멀+-니까) 먼니까	(멀+-었으니까) 멀었으니까
	어렵다 (to be difficult)	* (어렵+-으니까) 어려우니까	* (어렵+-었으니까) 어려웠으니까
	Noun이다 (to be)	(이+-니까) 친구일 때 가족일 때	(Noun+-었으니까) 친구였으니까 (Noun+-이었으니까) 가족이었으니까

**Scene 19** -(으)ㄹ 때 when

Verbs	-(으)ㄹ 때	Adjectives	-(으)ㄹ 때
하다 (to do)	(하+-ㄹ 때) 할 때	싸다 (to be cheap)	(싸+-ㄹ 때) 싸 때
보다 (to look)	(보+-ㄹ 때) 볼 때	좋다 (to be good)	(좋+-을 때) 좋을 때
먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-을 때) 먹을 때	재미있다 (to be fun)	(재미있+-을 때) 재미있을 때
쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-ㄹ 때) 쓸 때	바쁘다 (to be busy)	(바쁘+-ㄹ 때) 바쁠 때
부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-ㄹ 때) 부를 때	다르다 (to be different)	(다르+-ㄹ 때) 다를 때
듣다 (to listen)	* (듣+-을 때) 들을 때	멀다 (to be far)	* (멀+-ㄹ 때) 멀 때
살다 (to live)	* (살+-ㄹ 때) 살 때	길다 (to be long)	* (길+-ㄹ 때) 길 때
굽다 (to roast)	* (굽+-을 때) 구울 때	춥다 (to be cold)	* (춥+-을 때) 추울 때
붓다 (to swell)	* (붓+-을 때) 부을 때	Noun이다 (to be)	(이+-ㄹ 때) 친구일 때 가족일 때

**Scene 20** Explaining a situation -(으)ㄴ/는데

		-(으)ㄴ/는데(Present)	-았/었는데(Past)
Verbs	하다 (to do)	(하+-는데) 하는데	(하+-었는데) 했는데
	먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-는데) 먹는데	(먹+-었는데) 먹었는데
	쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-는데) 쓰는데	* (쓰+-었는데) 썼는데
	부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-는데) 부르는데	* (부르+-었는데) 불렀는데
	듣다 (to listen)	(듣+-는데) 듣는데	* (듣+-었는데) 들었는데
	알다 (to know)	* (알+-는데) 아는데	(알+-었는데) 알았는데
	굽다 (to roast)	(굽+-는데) 굽는데	* (굽+-었는데) 구웠는데
붓다 (to swell)	(붓+-는데) 붓는데	* (붓+-었는데) 부었는데	
Adjectives	피곤하다 (to be tired)	(피곤하+-ㄴ 데) 피곤한데	(피곤하+-었는데) 피곤했는데
	좋다 (to be good)	(좋+-은데) 좋은데	(좋+-었는데) 좋았는데
	바쁘다 (to be busy)	(바쁘+-ㄴ 데) 바쁜데	* (바쁘+-었는데) 바빴는데
	다르다 (to be different)	(다르+-ㄴ 데) 다른데	* (다르+-었는데) 달랐는데
	길다 (to be long)	* (길+-ㄴ 데) 긴데	(길+-었는데) 길었는데
	어렵다 (to be difficult)	* (어렵+-은데) 어려운데	* (어렵+-었는데) 어려웠는데
	Noun이다 (to be)	(이+-ㄴ 데) 친구인데 가족인데	(이+-었는데) 친구였는데 가족이었는데

Chapter 6

Scene 21 -아/어 주시겠어요? Would/Could you please...?

Verbs	-아/어 주시겠어요?	Verbs	-아/어 주시겠어요?
하다 (to do)	(하+-어 주시겠어요?) 해 주시겠어요?	쓰다 (to write)	* (쓰+-어 주시겠어요?) 써 주시겠어요?
오다 (to come)	(오+-아 주시겠어요?) 와 주시겠어요?	모으다 (to gather)	* (모으+-아 주시겠어요?) 모아 주시겠어요?
사다 (to buy)	(사+-아 주시겠어요?) 사 주시겠어요?	누르다 (to press)	* (누르+-어 주시겠어요?) 눌러 주시겠어요?
찍다 (to take, shoot)	(찍+-어 주시겠어요?) 찍어 주시겠어요?	듣다 (to listen)	* (듣+-어 주시겠어요?) 들어 주시겠어요?
읽다 (to read)	(읽+-어 주시겠어요?) 읽어 주시겠어요?	들다 (to hold)	(들+-어 주시겠어요?) 들어 주시겠어요?
기다리다 (to wait)	(기다리+-어 주시겠어요?) 기다려 주시겠어요?	굽다 (to roast)	* (굽+-어 주시겠어요?) 구워 주시겠어요?
외우다 (to memorize)	(외우+-어 주시겠어요?) 외워 주시겠어요?	붓다 (to pour)	* (붓+-어 주시겠어요?) 부어 주시겠어요?

Scene 22 -는 The noun modifier

Verbs	-는	Verbs	-는
하다 (to do)	(하+-는) 하는	먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-는) 먹는
보다 (to look)	(보+-는) 보는	찾다 (to find/look for)	(찾+-는) 찾는
만나다 (to meet)	(만나+-는) 만나는	걷다 (to walk)	(걸+-는) 걷는
마시다 (to drink)	(마시+-는) 마시는	알다 (to know)	* (알+-는) 아는
주다 (to give)	(주+-는) 주는	입다 (to wear)	(입+-는) 입는
쓰다 (to write)	(쓰+-는) 쓰는	굽다 (to roast)	(굽+-는) 굽는
부르다 (to sing)	(부르+-는) 부르는	붓다 (to pour)	(붓+-는) 붓는

Scene 23 -아/어 보세요 You should...

Verbs	-아/어 보세요	Verbs	-아/어 보세요
하다 (to do)	(하+-어 보세요) 해 보세요	쓰다 (to write)	* (쓰+-어 보세요) 써 보세요
가다 (to go)	(가+-아 보세요) 가 보세요	부르다 (to sing)	* (부르+-어 보세요) 불러 보세요
먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-어 보세요) 먹어 보세요	걷다 (to walk)	* (걸+-어 보세요) 걸어 보세요
마시다 (to drink)	(마시+-어 보세요) 마셔 보세요	살다 (to live)	(살+-아 보세요) 살아 보세요
배우다 (to learn)	(배우+-어 보세요) 배워 보세요	굽다 (to roast)	* (굽+-어 보세요) 구워 보세요
보다 (to look)	* (보+-아 보세요) 보세요	붓다 (to pour)	* (붓+-어 보세요) 부어 보세요

Scene 24 -아/어 봤다 I have done...

Verbs	-아/어 봤다	Verbs	-아/어 봤다
하다 (to do)	(하+-어 봤다) 해 봤다	쓰다 (to write)	* (쓰+-어 봤다) 써 봤다
가다 (to go)	(가+-아 봤다) 가 봤다	부르다 (to sing)	* (부르+-어 봤다) 불러 봤다
먹다 (to eat)	(먹+-어 봤다) 먹어 봤다	듣다 (to listen)	* (듣+-어 봤다) 들어 봤다
마시다 (to drink)	(마시+-어 봤다) 마셔 봤다	만들다 (to make)	(만들+-어 봤다) 만들어 봤다
배우다 (to learn)	(배우+-어 봤다) 배워 봤다	굽다 (to roast)	* (굽+-어 봤다) 구워 봤다
보다 (to look)	* (보+-아 봤다) 봤다	붓다 (to pour)	* (붓+-어 봤다) 부어 봤다

# Answers

## Part 1

### Unit 01

- 1 뵈겠습니다
- 2 잘 부탁드립니다

### Unit 02

- 1 감사합니다

### Unit 03

- 1 잘 모르겠는데요
- 2 그렇시다

### Unit 04

- 1 몇 시에 만나요
- 2 맞아요

### Unit 05

- 1 잘 지내셨어요
- 2 저도 잘 지냈어요

### Unit 06

- 1 잘 먹었습니다
- 2 잘 먹었습니다

### Unit 07

- 1 축하합니다
- 2 감사합니다

### Unit 08

- 1 여보세요
- 2 통화 괜찮아요

### Unit 09

- 1 말해 주세요
- 2 못 들었어요

### Unit 10

- 1 휴가 잘 보내세요
- 2 안녕히 가세요

## Part 2

### Scene 01

- 1 ㉠ 2 ㉡ 3 ㉢ 4 ㉣
- 5 기다려 주세요
- 6 고쳐 주세요
- 7 바꿔 주세요

### Scene 02

- 1 ① 2 ② 3 ③
- 4 건너세요
- 5 드세요
- 6 피우지 마세요

### Scene 03

- 1 좋아하세요
- 2 가세요
- 3 전화하셨어요
- 4 오셨어요
- 5 드셨어요
- 6 보세요
- 7 계셨어요
- 8 읽으셨어요

### Scene 04

- 1 ㉠ 2 ㉡ 3 ㉢ 4 ㉣
- 5 카페, 왼쪽
- 6 약국, 우체국, 오른쪽
- 7 쪽, 왼쪽, 뒤

### Scene 05

- 1 먹고 싶어요
- 2 가고 싶어요
- 3 보고 싶어요
- 4 ㉠ 만나고 싶어요
- 5 ㉡ 먹고 싶어요
- 6 ㉢ 배우고 싶어요
- 7 ㉣ 일하고 싶어요
- 8 ㉤ 보고 싶어요

Scene 06

- 1 ㉔    2 ㉑    3 ㉒    4 ㉓
- 5 ㉑
- 6 읽을 수 없어요
- 7 만날 수 있어요
- 8 입을 수 없어요

Scene 07

- 1 ㉑    2 ㉑    3 ㉒    4 ㉑
- 5 먹어야 돼요
- 6 마셔야 돼요
- 7 없어야 돼요

Scene 08

- 1 ㉔    2 ㉑    3 ㉑    4 ㉑
- 5 비싼
- 6 재미있는
- 7 매운

Scene 09

- 1 볼까요
- 2 마실까요
- 3 먹을까요
- 4 ㉑, ㉒, ㉓, ㉔, ㉕, ㉖

Scene 10

- 1 ㉔    2 ㉑    3 ㉒    4 ㉑
- 5 ㉔
- 6 먹으려고 해요
- 7 가려고 해요
- 8 있으려고 해요
- 9 찾으려고 해요

Scene 11

- 1 친절해서
- 2 몰라서
- 3 아파서
- 4 먹어서
- 5 내일 아침에 약속이 있어서
- 6 한국 사람하고 말하고 싶어서
- 7 핸드폰이 고장 나서

Scene 12

- 1 봅니다
- 2 먹습니다
- 3 마십니다
- 4 봤습니다
- 5 재미있었습니다
- 6 왔습니다
- 7 일합니다
- 8 시작했습니다

Scene 13

- 1 비행기, 자동차, 더
- 2 침대, 의자, 더
- 3 더 많아요
- 4 ㉑
- 5 ㉑
- 6 ㉒
- 7 ㉒

Scene 14

- 1 ㉑    2 ㉒    3 ㉑    4 ㉒
- 5 바쁘게
- 6 크게
- 7 짧게
- 8 쉽게

Scene 15

- 1 ㉔    2 ㉒    3 ㉒    4 ㉑
- 5 멋있지만
- 6 싶지만
- 7 맵지만
- 8 했지만
- 9 먹었지만

Scene 16

- 1 일어나겠습니다 / 일어날게요
- 2 먹겠습니다 / 먹을게요
- 3 읽겠습니다 / 읽을게요
- 4 말하지 않겠습니다 / 말하지 않을게요
- 5 사시겠어요
- 6 입으시겠어요

- 7 보시겠어요
- 8 드시겠어요

**Scene 17**

- 1 운동하고
- 2 춤고
- 3 먹고
- 4 마시고
- 5 보고
- 6 끝나고
- 7 쓰고
- 8 배우고

**Scene 18**

- 1 ㉢    2 ㉢    3 ㉠    4 ㉡
- 5 아침에 길이 막히니까
- 6 여기는 비싸니까
- 7 오늘은 다른 약속이 있으니까
- 8 재미있는 영화를 하니까

**Scene 19**

- 1 ㉡    2 ㉠    3 ㉣
- 4 회사 면접을 볼
- 5 일이 많이 있을
- 6 대학교에 다닐 때/다녔을 때

**Scene 20**

- 1 ㉡ 오늘 날씨가 안 좋는데
- 2 ㉠ 지금 식사하고 있는데
- 3 ㉢ 길을 잃어버렸는데
- 4 식당에 갔는데
- 5 내일은 시간이 없는데
- 6 한식이 먹고 싶는데
- 7 얘기하려고 했는데

**Scene 21**

- 1 이 주소를 찾아 주시겠어요?
- 2 조금 후에 연락해 주시겠어요?
- 3 사진을 찍어 주시겠어요?
- 4 여기에 사인해 주시겠어요?
- 5 ㉢
- 6 ㉡

- 7 ㉠
- 8 ㉢
- 9 알려 주시겠어요
- 10 예약해 주시겠어요
- 11 보여 주시겠어요
- 12 치워 주시겠어요

**Scene 22**

- 1 전화하는
- 2 출발하는
- 3 만드는
- 4 먹을 수 없는
- 5 외국인이 좋아하는
- 6 명동에 가는

**Scene 23**

- 1 가 보세요
- 2 입어 보세요
- 3 기다려 보세요
- 4 들어 보세요
- 5 타 보세요
- 6 써 보세요
- 7 신어 보세요
- 8 만들어 보세요
- 9 걸어 보세요

**Scene 24**

- 1 해 봤어요
- 2 입어 봤어요
- 3 먹어 봤어요, 못 먹어 봤어요/  
안 먹어 봤어요
- 4 ㉢
- 5 ㉠
- 6 ㉢

# Index

## Vocabulary

### [ A ]

a little	조금	91
a location marker indicating a place in which an action takes place	에서	75
a lot	많이, 많다	117 151
a marker for comparison	은/는	193
a marker indicating a destination or the place of a state	에	75
a must-eat restaurant	맛집	253
a room for multiple people	다인실	240
additional fee	추가 요금	180
address	주소	104
after, later	후	101
again	다시	203
age	나이	86
airplane	비행기	192 256
all	다, 전부	159 253
alley	골목	94
also, and	그리고	159
also, too	도	159
and	하고	101
and then, next	그다음	91
app (application)	앱	106
application form	신청서	101
(to) apply	신청하다	101
around	쯤	135
arrival	도착	78
as well, too, also	또	159
Australia	호주	193

### [ B ]

B&B	민박	256
bag	가방	227
bangs (lit. front hair)	앞머리	177
basic fee	기본 요금	180
(to) be	있다	67
before	전	203
bill	청구서	222
blue	파란색	227
boat, ship	배	193
book	책	227
bread	빵	159

(to be) broken	고장 나다	219
broker	중개인	112
bus	버스	67 256
bus driver	버스 기사	70
bus stop	버스 정류장	70
but, however	그런데	83 143
(to) buy	사다	245
(to) buy a ticket in advance	예매하다	138
by means of (a marker indicating a method, means, and tool of action)	(으)로	75 125
by means of what	뭘로	125

### [ C ]

(to) call	전화하다	219
(to) cancel	취소하다	138
cannot	못	125
cell phone	핸드폰	117 230
changing room	탈의실	188
(to) charge, recharge	충전하다	120
charge, fee	요금	117
(to be) cheap	싸다	169
(to) check, verify, confirm	확인하다	237
check-in (entering the room)	체크인 (입실)	237 240
check-out (leaving the room)	체크아웃 (퇴실)	240
chopsticks	젓가락	128
(to be) close	가깝다	253
(to) close the store	문을 닫다	162
clothing	옷	211
coffee	커피	159
color	색	214
(to) come	오다	169
(to) contact	연락하다	219
contact information	연락처	86 227
convenience store	편의점	91
cool	멋있다	261
counter for general things	개	159
counter for people	명	245
country of citizenship	국적	104
(to) cross, go over	건너다	91
crosswalk	횡단보도	91
cup	잔	159
(to) cut	자르다	117 180
(to) cut, sever, break off	끊다	143



[ D ]

date	날짜	138
date of birth	생년월일	104
day	일	193
(to) decide, determine	정하다	143
definitely	꼭	261
(to) deliver	배달하다	172
(to) depart, leave	출발하다	219
departure	출발	78
design	디자인	169
(to be) different	다르다	169
dinner time (lit. dinner)	저녁	245
dishes	요리	253
(to be) dizzy	어지럽다	206
(to) do, have	하다	185
document	서류	230
double room	2인실	240
down payment	계약금	112
(to) dye	염색하다	180

[ E ]

earphones	이어폰	230
emergency exit	비상구	78
English	영어	125
entrance	입구	78
entrance fee	입장료	248
every	마다	67
exchange	교환	214
excluding breakfast	조식 제외	240
(to) exercise	운동하다	185
exit	출구	78 151
(to be) expensive	비싸다	169
(to) experience indigestion	소화가 안되다	206
family name	성	104

[ F ]

fan	선풍기	169
(to be) far, distant, remote	멀다	83 253
fee charging	유료	222
fees	수수료	248
fever	열	203
few times	몇 번	261
first name	이름	104
(to be) fine	좋다	135

food	음식	125
food expense	식비	248
foreigner	외국인	83 101
free of charge	무료	222
friend	친구	143
from	에서	253
from (time), starting	부터	185

[ G ]

Gangnam station	강남역	75
garbage can	쓰레기통	94
gender	성별	104
(to) get (a medical disease), have (a symptom)	나다	203
(to) get on, get in, ride, take (a vehicle)	타다	75
(to) give	주다	101
(to) give a discount	할인하다	172
(to) go	가다	67
(to) go out	나가다	237
(to be) good at	잘하다	83
(to be) good	좋다	135
guarantee, warranty	보증서	172
guesthouse	게스트하우스	256
Gyeongju	경주	261
gym shoes, running shoes	운동화	188
gym suit	운동복	188

[ H ]

hair	머리	177
(to) hang up (the phone)	전화를 끊다	146
(to) have a cough	기침이 나다	206
(to) have a sale	세일하다	172
(to) have a swollen throat	목이 붓다	206
(to) help	돕다	227
here	여기	101
historical sites	유적지	256
hobby	취미	86
hometown	고향	86
Hongik University Station	홍대입구역	151
hotel	호텔	256
house	집	106
how	어떻게	75
how long	얼마 동안	117
how much	얼마, 어느 정도	117

(to) hurt one's leg	다리를 다치다	206
(to) hurt, be sick	아프다	203

[ I ]

I	제가	125
I always do it.	항상 해요.	264
I am busy.	바빠요.	154
I caught a cold.	감기에 걸렸어요.	154
I did it once.	한 번 해 봤어요.	264
I do it from time to time.	가끔 해요.	264
I do it often.	자주 해요.	264
I don't at all.	전혀 안 해요.	264
I don't have time.	시간이 없어요.	154
I have a headache.	머리가 아파요.	154
I have a lot of work.	일이 많아요.	154
I rarely do.	거의 안 해요.	264
ice coffee	아이스 커피	159
identification card	신분증	230
I'm not feeling well.	몸이 안 좋아요.	154
immediately	바로	106
in detail	자세히	219
in front of	앞	91
including breakfast	조식 포함	240
individual plate	개인 접시 (= 앞접시)	128
Insadong (a place in Seoul famous for Korean traditional stores and museums)	인사동	91
inside	안	185
intersection, four-way stop	사거리	94
island	섬	245
(to be) issued, come out	나오다	101
I've done it a few times.	몇 번 해 봤어요.	264
I've done it a lot.	많이 해 봤어요.	264
I've never done it before.	한 번도 안 해 봤어요.	264
I've tried it several times.	여러 번 해 봤어요.	264

[ J ]

Japan	일본	83
Jeju Island	제주도	261
juice	주스	159

[ K ]

(to) know	알다	151
Korea	한국	261
Korean (language)	한국말	83

[ L ]

landlord	집주인	112
(to be) large	크다	211
later	이따가	219
(to) let somebody know	알리다	253
letter	편지	196
(to) like	좋아하다	253
(to) like something	마음에 들다	211
(to) line up	줄을 서다	162
local food	지역 음식	256
location	위치	253
lodging expense	숙박비	248
(to) look	보다	211
(to) look for	찾다	211
(to) lose	잃어버리다	227
luggage	짐	70

[ M ]

mail	우편	101
mailing address	주소	101
maintenance fees	관리비	112
major (area of study)	전공	86
(to) make a call	전화를 걸다	146
(to) make a contract	계약하다	106
(to) make a request	부탁하다	237
(to) make a reservation	예약하다	138 237
(to) make a video call	영상 통화하다	146
(to) make, create	만들다	125
map	지도	253
medicine	약	203
(to) meet	만나다	135
menu	메뉴	125
minute	분	67
money	돈	117
month	달	117
monthly rent	월세	112
more	더	91 169
more than	보다	106
morning (am)	아침	185
(the) most	제일	169
(to) move	이사하다	106
movie	영화	135
Mr., Mrs., Ms., Miss	씨	135
Myeongdong (a place in Seoul)	명동	67

[ N ]

name	이름, 성함	227 237
nation, country	나라	86
near (in the vicinity of)	근처	151
(to be) needed, necessary	필요하다	159
New Year's money	세뱃돈	248
next month	다음 달	185
night (pm)	밤	185
night view	야경	261
not	아니다, 안	83 125
(to) not be good at	못하다	83
now	지금	106

[ O ]

ok, alright, good	괜찮다	143
one way	편도	245
only	만	159
(to) open the door	문을 열다	162
(to be) or do not	않다	177
(to) order	주문하다	162
over there	저기	75

[ P ]

(to) pack, wrap	포장하다	172
pants	바지	211
parcel	택배	193 196
park	공원	151
part, place, spot	데	203
passport	여권	101
password	비밀번호	120
(to) pay	계산하다, 돈을 내다	117 162
people	사람	151
(to) perm	파마하다	180
pharmacy	약국	91
photo	사진	101
cell phone	핸드폰	117 230
(to) pick up (the phone)	전화를 받다	146
place	장소	138
please, a little	좀	67 169
plural marker	들	143
pocket money	용돈	248
(to be) popular	인기가 많다	169
pork	돼지고기	125
(to be) possible	가능하다	237

pocket money	용돈	248
price	가격	117
private locker	사물함 (로커)	188
prize money	상금	248

[ Q ]

quality	품질	214
quickly	빨리	219

[ R ]

real estate	부동산	106
really	진짜	253
receipt	영수증	162
(to) receive a text (message)	문자 메시지를 받다	146
(to) receive, get	받다	101
recharge	충전	70
recipient (to)	받는 사람	196
refund	환불	214
registered mail	등기	196
registration certificate	등록증	101
repairman	수리 기사	219 222
(to) rest (not work)	쉬다	185
restaurant	식당	253
(to) return, come back	돌아오다	245
returned merchandise	반품	214
rice	밥	128
room	방	237
round trip	왕복	245
runny nose	콧물	203

[ S ]

Saturday	토요일	185
(to) say, tell, speak	얘기하다	143
scholarship	장학금	248
seafood	해산물	253
security deposit	보증금	112
(to be) seen	보이다	91
(to) send	보내다	193
(to) send a text (message)	문자 메시지를 보내다	146
sender (from)	보내는 사람	196
service center	서비스 센터	172
(to be) short	짧다	177
(to) show, display	보여 주다	106
shower room	샤워실	188

side dish	반찬	128
sign, billboard	간판	94
since when	언제부터	203
single room	1인실	240
(to) sit	앉다	125
size	사이즈 (= 크기)	211 214
size, measurement	치수	211
slowly, leisurely	천천히	67 117
(to be) small	작다	211
sometime in the future	나중에	261
soon	곧	219
soup	국	128
(to) speak, say, tell	말하다	67
(to be) spicy	맵다	125
spoon	숟가락	128
stairs	계단	75
station	역	151
stew	찌개	128
still, so far, yet	아직	83
straight	쭉	91
strawberry	딸기	159
subway	지하철	75
Sunday	일요일	185

[ T ]

(to) take (time)	걸리다	193
(to) take care of something	말다	237
(to) take medicine	약을 먹다	203
(to) talk over the telephone	통화하다	143
tap	수도	219
(to be) tasty	맛있다	253
text message	문자 메시지	120
that	저	106
that kind of	그런	227
the left side	왼쪽	91
the opposite side	반대쪽	75
the right side	오른쪽	91
then	그럼	106
there	거기	151
There are many vehicles on the road.	길에 차가 많아요.	154
There is heavy traffic.	교통이 복잡해요.	154
thing	거	159
this	이	75

this one	이거	117
this way, this direction	이쪽	91
throat	목	203
ticket	표	245
ticket booth	매표소	70
ticket gate	개찰구	78
time	시간	135
to	한테	106
tofu	두부	125
together	같이	135
tomorrow	내일	135
too	너무	177
tourist attractions	관광지	256
towel, washcloth	수건	188
traditional food	전통 음식	256
traffic light	신호등	94
train	기차	256
transportation card	교통 카드	70
transportation expense	교통비	248
(to) travel	여행하다	261
(to) trim	다듬다	180
tuition	등록금	248
(to) turn off the power	전원을 끄다	120
(to) turn on the power	전원을 켜다	120

[ U ]

unit	호	219
usage fee	이용료	248

[ V ]

voice message	음성 메시지	120
---------------	--------	-----

[ W ]

(to) wait	기다라다	219
wallet	지갑	230
water	물	219
we, our, us	우리	135
(to) wear	입다	211
week	주	101
well	잘	83
what	뭐, 무엇	211 217
what kind	어떤	227
what number, which number	몇 번	67
what time	몇 시	135

when	언제	101
where	어디에, 어디가	151 261
which	무슨, 어느	143 177
white	흰색	211
why	왜	135
won (Korean currency)	원	159
(to) write	쓰다	101

[ **Y** ]

year	년	117
------	---	-----

## Expressions

### [ A ]

A sandwich, please.	샌드위치 주세요.	163
About 100 people.	100명쯤 있어요.	95
About 100,000 won.	10만 원쯤 돼요.	223
About 200,000 won.	20만 원쯤 돼요.	223
About 500,000 won.	50만 원쯤 돼요.	223
(There's a bus that arrives) after 10 minutes.	10분 후에 있어요.	71
And then?	그다음은요?	91
Anyone can come.	누구든지 올 수 있습니다.	162
Are we far from...?	...멀었어요?	83
Are you all right with 3 o'clock?	3시 괜찮아요?	139
Are you all right with an action movie?	액션 영화 괜찮아요?	139
Are you all right with Korean food?	한국 음식 괜찮아요?	139
Are you all right with Saturday?	토요일 괜찮아요?	139
Are you American?	미국 분이세요?	86
Are you an office worker?	직장인이세요?	86
Are you available to talk now?	지금 통화할 수 있어요?	143
Are you closed on holidays, right?	휴일에 문을 닫죠?	189
Are you Korean?	한국 분이세요?	86
(There's a bus) at 12:00.	12시에 있어요.	71
At what time?	몇 시요?	241

### [ B ]

Be sure to go to the beach. It's really nice.	바닷가에 꼭 가 보세요. 진짜 좋아요.	256
Be sure to make kimchi. It's really fun	김치를 꼭 만들어 보세요. 진짜 재미있어요.	256
Be sure to ride the cable car. It's really comfortable.	케이블카를 꼭 타 보세요. 진짜 편해요.	256
Be sure to try the seafood. It's really delicious.	해산물을 꼭 먹어 보세요. 진짜 맛있어요.	256
Be sure to visit later.	나중에 꼭 가 보세요.	261
By what means do you do this?	이거 어떻게 하는 거예요?	248
By what means do you eat this?	이거 어떻게 먹는 거예요?	248

Bye. (lit. I'm hanging up.)	끊을게요.	143
-----------------------------	-------	-----

### [ C ]

Can I look around inside?	안을 볼 수 있어요?	185
Can I look at this one?	이거 좀 볼 수 있어요?	117
Can I sign a contract now?	지금 계약할 수 있어요?	112
Can I take-out?	포장 돼요?	173
Can I touch this?	이거 만져 봐도 돼요?	121
Can I try on a hat?	모자를 써 볼 수 있어요?	215
Can I try on a scarf?	스카프를 해 볼 수 있어요?	215
Can I try on the pants?	바지를 입어 볼 수 있어요?	215
Can I try on these runners?	운동화를 신어 볼 수 있어요?	215
Can I try this on?	이거 입어 볼 수 있어요?	211
Can I try this on?	이거 신어 봐도 돼요?	121
Can I try this? (lit. Can I eat this?)	이거 먹어 봐도 돼요?	121
Can I wear this?	이거 입어 봐도 돼요?	121
Can we meet now?	지금 만날 수 있어요?	112
Can we talk now?	지금 얘기할 수 있어요?	112
Can you leave now?	지금 출발할 수 있어요?	112
Certificate, please.	증명서 주세요.	105
Check-in starts at noon.	12시부터 체크인이 가능합니다.	237
Coffee, please.	커피 부탁드립니다.	241
Come this way, please.	이쪽으로 오세요.	185
Could you please call a taxi for me?	택시 좀 불러 주시겠어요?	240
Could you please confirm my reservation?	예약을 확인해 주시겠어요?	237
Could you please give me a towel?	수건 좀 더 주시겠어요?	240
Could you please give me some more of this?	이거 좀 더 주시겠어요?	240
Could you please give me some more side dishes?	반찬 좀 더 주시겠어요?	240
Could you please give me some more water?	물 좀 더 주시겠어요?	240
Could you please lift my luggage?	짐 좀 들어 주시겠어요?	240
Could you please look after my bag?	가방 좀 맡아 주시겠어요?	240
Could you please press the 7th-floor button?	7층 버튼 좀 눌러 주시겠어요?	240

Could you show me ...  
 ... 좀 보여 주세요. .... 169

[ D ]

Do not cut it, please.  
 ..... 자르지 마세요. .... 177

Do you accept credit cards?  
 ..... 카드 돼요? ..... 173

Do you deliver? ..... 배달 돼요? ..... 173

Do you have any non-spicy food?  
 ..... 안 매운 음식이 있어요? ..... 125

Do you have anything else?  
 ..... 다른 것 있어요? ..... 128

Do you have anything non-spicy?  
 ..... 안 매운 것 있어요? ..... 128

Do you have anything that isn't expensive?  
 ..... 안 비싼 것 있어요? ..... 128

Do you have lockers, don't you?  
 ..... 사물함이 있죠? ..... 189

Do you have the same thing?  
 ..... 같은 것 있어요? ..... 128

Do you know ...?  
 ..... ...알아요? ..... 151

Do you like it? ..... 마음에 드세요? ..... 211

Don't eat any food. .... 음식을 먹지 마세요. .... 78

Don't run. .... 뛰지 마세요. .... 78

Don't smoke. .... 담배를 피우지 마세요. .... 78

Don't take any pictures. .... 사진을 찍지 마세요. .... 78

[ E ]

(There's a bus) every 20 minutes.  
 ..... 20분마다 있어요. .... 71

(There's a bus) every 30 minutes.  
 ..... 30분마다 있어요. .... 71

Excuse me. .... 저..... .... 67

Excuse me? ..... 네? ..... 67

Exercise for 30 minutes and eat vegetables often.  
 ..... 30분씩 운동하고 채소를 자주 드세요. .... 206

[ F ]

For how long do I have to go to the hospital?  
 ..... 얼마 동안 병원에 다녀야 돼요? ..... 120

For how long do I have to pay?  
 ..... 얼마 동안 돈을 내야 돼요? ..... 120

For how long do I have to wait?  
 ..... 얼마 동안 기다려야 돼요? ..... 120

For how long do I have to work part-time?  
 ..... 얼마 동안 아르바이트해야 돼요? ..... 120

For how many people?  
 ..... 몇 명 가실 거예요? ..... 245

From 9 am to 8 pm.  
 ..... 아침 9시부터 저녁 8시까지 해요. .... 189

From what day to what day are you traveling?  
 ..... 며칠부터 며칠까지 여행 가요? ..... 189

From what time to what time are you open?  
 ..... 몇시부터 몇시까지 해요? ..... 185

From what time to what time do you open the shop?  
 ..... 몇시부터 몇시까지 가게를 해요? ..... 189

From when to when are you on vacation?  
 ..... 언제부터 언제까지 휴가예요? ..... 189

[ G ]

Give me this one, please.  
 ..... 이거 하나 주세요. .... 125

Go along the road. .... 길을 따라 가세요. .... 78

Go in that direction. .... 쪽 가세요. .... 78

Go left. .... 왼쪽으로 가세요. .... 78

Go right. .... 오른쪽으로 가세요. .... 78

[ H ]

Have you traveled in Korea?  
 ..... 한국에서 여행해 봤어요? ..... 261

He should be coming soon.  
 ..... 곧 올 거예요. .... 219

Hello. .... 여보세요. .... 135

Here it is. .... 여기 있어요. .... 101

Here you go. .... 여기요. .... 101

Hold on. .... 잠깐만요. .... 67

How about 3 o'clock? ..... 3시쯤 어때요? ..... 135

How about 4 o'clock instead of 3 o'clock?  
 ..... 3시 말고 4시는 어때요? ..... 139

How about a comedy movie instead of an action movie?  
 ..... 액션 영화 말고 코미디 영화는 어때요? ..... 139

How about a walk? ..... 좀 걸으면 어때요? ..... 147

How about calling another friend too?  
 ..... 다른 친구도 부르면 어때요? ..... 147

How about Chinese food instead of Korean food?  
 ..... 한국 음식 말고 중국 음식은 어때요? ..... 139

How about eating together?  
 ..... 같이 식사하면 어때요? ..... 147

How about meeting early tomorrow?  
 ..... 내일 일찍 만나면 어때요? ..... 147

How about Sunday instead of Saturday?  
 ..... 토요일 말고 일요일은 어때요? ..... 139

How about this one? ..... 이거 어때요? ..... 169

How about this? ..... 이거 어때요? ..... 173

How are you feeling? ..... 몸이 어때요? ..... 206

How are you going home?  
 ..... 어떻게 집에 갈 거예요? ..... 146

How can I help you? ..... 무엇을 도와드릴까요? .....	104
How did it break? ..... 어떻게 고장 났어요? .....	219
How did you go about finding a house? ..... 집을 구할 때 어떻게 했어요? .....	222
How do I get there? ..... 어떻게 가야 해요? .....	79
How do I get there? Please, let me know. ..... 어떻게 가야 해요? 알려 주세요. ....	70
How do I get to the museum? ..... 박물관에 어떻게 가요? .....	94
How do I get to the other side? ..... 반대쪽에 어떻게 가요? .....	75
How do I get to the restaurant? ..... 식당에 어떻게 가요? .....	94
How do I get to the subway station? ..... 지하철역에 어떻게 가요? .....	94
How do I get to...? ..... ..에 어떻게 가요? .....	91
How do you do this? ..... 이거 어떻게 하는 거예요? .....	248
How do you eat this? ..... 이거 어떻게 먹는 거예요? .....	248
How do you get there? ..... 어떻게 가요? .....	249
How does kimchi taste? ..... 김치 맛이 어때요? .....	197
How far do I have to go? ..... 얼마나 멀리 가야 해요? .....	95
How is your trip? ..... 여행이 어때요? .....	206
How long do I have to go? ..... 얼마나 오래 가야 해요? .....	95
How long does it take to get to Gangnam Station from here? ..... 여기에서 강남역까지 얼마나 걸려요? .....	87
How long does it take? ..... 시간이 얼마나 걸려요? .....	197
How long does it take? Please, let me know. ..... 시간이 얼마나 걸려요? 알려 주세요. ....	70
How long would it take? ..... 시간이 얼마나 걸려요? .....	193
How many people are in your family? ..... 가족이 어떻게 되세요? .....	241
How many people are there? ..... 얼마나 많이 사람이 있어요? .....	95
How many would you like? ..... 몇 개 드릴까요? .....	163
How may I help you? ..... 무엇을 도와 드릴까요? .....	227
How much does it cost? ..... 값이 얼마예요? .....	197
How much does the repair fee cost? ..... 수리비가 얼마나 돼요? .....	223
How much is it for a month? ..... 한 달에 얼마예요? .....	185
How much is the bus fare? Please, let me know. ..... 버스비가 얼마예요? 알려 주세요. ....	70
How much is the ticket? ..... 표 값이 얼마나 돼요? .....	223
How much is this? ..... 이거 얼마예요? .....	117

How much is your monthly rent? ..... 월세가 얼마나 돼요? .....	223
How often (does ... come/is there) ... ? ..... 얼마나 자주 ...이/가 있어요? .....	67
How short would you like it (to be cut)? ..... 어느 정도로 잘라 드릴까요? .....	177
How was the accommodation? ..... 숙소가 어땠어요? .....	265
How would you like your bangs? ..... 앞머리는 어떻게 할까요? .....	177
How would you like your hair to be done? ..... 머리를 어떻게 할까요? .....	177
How's the food? ..... 음식이 어때요? .....	265
How's the weather? ..... 날씨가 어때요? .....	265

[ I ]

I ate Korean food, and it was really delicious. ..... 한국 음식을 먹었는데, 정말 맛있었어요. ....	230
I ate, but I'm still hungry. ..... 밥을 먹었지만 아직도 배고파요. ....	188
I came here a week ago. .... 일주일 전에 왔어요. ....	86
I came here for the first time. .... 이곳에 처음 왔어요. ....	264
I came to study Korean. .... 한국어를 공부하러 왔어요. ....	105
I came to travel. .... 여행하러 왔어요. ....	105
I can drink coffee or juice. .... 커피나 주스를 마셔요. ....	249
I can eat gimbab or sandwiches. ..... 김밥이나 샌드위치를 먹어요. ....	249
I cannot hear (you). Could you please speak loudly? ..... 안 들려요. 크게 말해 주세요. ....	70
I can't because I don't have time. ..... 시간이 없어서 안 돼요. ....	154
I can't because it's expensive. ..... 비싸서 안 돼요. ....	154
I can't because my head hurts. ..... 머리가 아파서 안 돼요. ....	154
I can't because the weather is bad. ..... 날씨가 나빠서 안 돼요. ....	154
I can't buy clothes because I don't have money. ..... 돈이 없어서 옷을 살 수 없어요. ....	154
I can't exercise because I'm tired. ..... 피곤해서 운동할 수 없어요. ....	154
I can't hear well. I'll call you back. ..... 소리가 잘 안 들려요. 제가 다시 전화할게요. ....	155
I can't meet you because I don't have time. ..... 시간이 없어서 만날 수 없어요. ....	154
I can't meet you because I'm busy. ..... 바빠서 만날 수 없어요. ....	154
I can't write Korean well. .... 한국어를 잘 못 써요. ....	257
I couldn't hear (it). Could you please say it again? ..... 못 들었어요. 다시 한번 말해 주세요. ....	70



I don't know Korean. Could you please speak in English? ..... 한국어를 몰라요. 영어로 말해 주세요. ....	70
I don't have any money. .... 돈이 하나도 없습니다. ....	162
I don't like hot stuff very much. ..... 뜨거운 것을 별로 안 좋아해요. ....	128
I don't like noisy things very much. ..... 시끄러운 것을 별로 안 좋아해요. ....	128
I don't like spicy things very much. ..... 매운 것을 별로 안 좋아해요. ....	128
I don't like uncomfortable things very much. ..... 불편한 것을 별로 안 좋아해요. ....	128
I drank coffee, but I want to sleep. ..... 커피를 마셨지만 자고 싶어요. ....	188
I exercise and meet friends. ..... 운동도 하고 친구도 만나요. ....	206
I get up early on weekdays but late on weekends. ..... 평일에 일찍 일어나지만 주말에 늦게 일어나요. ....	188
I go by plane or ship. .... 비행기나 배로 가요. ....	249
I go to school. .... 학교에 다녀요. ....	87
I had a headache since yesterday. ..... 어제부터 머리가 아파요. ....	207
I have a fever and a runny nose. ..... 열도 있고 콧물도 나요. ....	203
I have been experiencing indigestion since a week ago. ..... 일주일 전부터 소화가 안 돼요. ....	207
I have to hang up now. I'll call you back. ..... 이제 끊어야겠어요. 제가 다시 전화할게요. ....	155
I haven't been there yet. ..... 아직 못 가 봤어요. ....	261
I heard this song for the first time. ..... 이 노래를 처음 들어 봤어요. ....	264
I hope it is around 500,000 won per month. ..... 한 달에 50만 원 정도면 좋겠어요. ....	113
I hope it is around 600,000 won per month. ..... 한 달에 60만 원 정도면 좋겠어요. ....	113
I like all Korean food. ..... 저는 한국 음식 다 좋아해요. ....	253
I like the design. .... 디자인이 마음에 들어요. ....	211
I live in Gangnam, Seoul. .... 서울 강남에 살아요. ....	155
I lost my phone. What should I do? ..... 핸드폰을 잃어버렸는데 어떻게 해야 돼요? ....	230
I need to submit an application form. Where should I submit it? ..... 신청서를 내야 되는데 어디에 내야 돼요? ....	230
I only have my passport in it. .... 여권만 있어요. ....	231
I read this book for the first time. ..... 이 책을 처음 읽어 봤어요. ....	264
I started last year. .... 작년에 시작했어요. ....	86
I studied Korean, but it is still difficult. ..... 한국어를 공부했지만 아직 어려워요. ....	188

I tried this food for the first time. ..... 이 음식을 처음 먹어 봤어요. ....	264
I want to apply for a foreigner registration card. ..... 외국인 등록증을 신청하고 싶은데요. ....	104
I want to apply for a visa. ..... 비자를 신청하고 싶은데요. ....	104
I want to cancel the reservation. ..... 예약을 취소하고 싶어요. ....	104
I want to change my reservation to Thursday. ..... 예약을 목요일로 바꾸고 싶어요. ....	104
I want to change my visa. .... 비자를 바꾸고 싶은데요. ....	104
I want to change the reservation to next week. ..... 예약을 다음 주로 연기하고 싶어요. ....	104
I want to extend my visa. .... 비자를 연장하고 싶은데요. ....	104
I want to make a reservation. .... 예약하고 싶어요. ....	104
I want to see the pictures. .... 사진을 보고 싶어요. ....	257
I went to the mountains, and the scenery was really beautiful. ..... 산에 갔는데, 경치가 정말 아름다웠어요. ....	230
I will. .... 알겠어요. 그럴게요. ....	75, 261
I work at a company. .... 회사에 다녀요. ....	87
I work at a private educational institute. ..... 학원에서 일해요. ....	87
I work at home. .... 집에서 일해요. ....	87
I would like this one size smaller. ..... 한 치수 작은 사이즈로 주세요. ....	211
I would like to view the house now. ..... 지금 집을 보고 싶어요. ....	109
I'm looking for a house near a subway station. ..... 지하철역 근처 집을 찾고 있어요. ....	113
I'm looking for a quiet home. ..... 조용한 집을 찾고 있어요. ....	113
I'm looking for an affordable house. ..... 싼 집을 찾고 있어요. ....	113
I'd like to watch a comedy movie. ..... 코미디 영화를 볼게요. ....	196
I'll go look around a bit more. .... 좀 더 보고 올게요. ....	169
I'll go there now. .... 지금 갈게요. ....	151
I'll leave it in your care. .... 부탁드립니다. ....	237
I'll listen to Korean music. .... 한국 음악을 들을게요. ....	196
I'll use airmail. .... 비행기로 보낼게요. ....	193
I'm at exit 2 of the subway station. ..... 지하철역 2번 출구에 있어요. ....	155
I'm at the main entrance of the school. ..... 학교 정문 앞에 있어요. ....	155
I'm good. .... 괜찮아요. ....	143
I'm here to see my family. .... 가족을 만나러 왔어요. ....	105
I'm here to work. .... 일하러 왔어요. ....	105
I'm looking for a new home. .... 새 집을 찾고 있어요. ....	113

I'm sorry. I won't be late next time. ..... 미안합니다. 다음에 늦지 않을게요. ....	196
I've been to Jeju Island once. ..... 제주도에 한 번 가 봤어요. ....	264
I've traveled a few times. ..... 몇 번 여행해 봤어요. ....	261
I've ridden a bike twice. ..... 자전거를 두 번 타 봤어요. ....	264
ID, please. .... 신분증 주세요. ....	105
If something goes wrong, you can cancel it right away. ..... 문제가 생기면 바로 취소할 수 있어요. ....	112
If you go left, you'll see the museum. ..... 왼쪽으로 가면 박물관이 있어요. ....	94
If you go right, you'll see the subway station. ..... 오른쪽으로 가면 지하철역이 보여요. ....	94
If you have a question, ask me anytime. ..... 질문이 있으면 언제든지 물어보세요. ....	94
If you like coffee, you should try this coffee. ..... 커피를 좋아하면 이 커피를 한번 마셔 보세요. ....	256
If you like fish, you should try sashimi. ..... 생선을 좋아하면 회를 한번 먹어 보세요. ....	256
If you like Korean music, you should listen to this song. ..... 한국 음악을 좋아하면 이 음악을 한번 들어 보세요. ....	256
If you like the sea, you should go to the island. ..... 바다를 좋아하면 섬에 한번 가 보세요. ....	256
If you pass that building, you'll see the restaurant. ..... 저 건물을 지나면 식당이 보여요. ....	94
If you see the crosswalk, cross the street. ..... 횡단보도를 보면 건너세요. ....	94
If you see the pharmacy, go right. ..... 약국이 보이면 오른쪽으로 가세요. ....	94
I'll drink hot coffee. ..... 따뜻한 커피를 마실게요. ....	196
I'll show you. .... 제가 보여 드릴게요. ....	257
I'll write it for you. .... 제가 써 드릴게요. ....	257
I'm going on a trip from the 23rd to the 26th. ..... 23일부터 26일까지 여행 가요. ....	189
I'm going to start dieting from today. ..... 오늘부터 다이어트하려고 해요. ....	146
I'm going to start exercising from tomorrow. ..... 내일부터 운동을 시작하려고 해요. ....	146
I'm going to try not speak English from tomorrow. ..... 내일부터 영어로 말하지 않으려고 해요. ....	146
I'm not familiar with this grammar. ..... 이 문법을 잘 모르겠어요. ....	257
I'm not going to play games starting from today. ..... 오늘부터 게임을 안 하려고 해요. ....	146
I'm not good at Korean. How should I study? ..... 한국어를 잘 못하는데 어떻게 공부해야 돼요? ....	230
I'm on vacation from Wednesday to Friday this week. ..... 수요일부터 금요일까지 휴가예요. ....	189

I'm studying Korean, but it's a little difficult. ..... 한국어를 공부하고 있는데, 조금 어려워요. ....	230
Is everything else all right? ..... 다른 데는 괜찮아요? ....	203
Is it far from here? ..... 여기에서 멀어요? ....	253
Is there a bathroom nearby? ..... 이 근처에 화장실이 있어요? ....	95
Is there a convenience store nearby? ..... 이 근처에 편의점이 있어요? ....	95
Is there a different design? ..... 다른 디자인 없어요? ....	169
Is there a movie theater nearby? ..... 이 근처에 영화관이 있어요? ....	95
Is there a must-eat restaurant in this vicinity? ..... 이 근처에 맛집 있어요? ....	253
Is there any other colors? ..... 다른 색 없어요? ....	173
Is there any other designs? ..... 다른 디자인 없어요? ....	173
Is there any other models? ..... 다른 모델 없어요? ....	173
Is there anything cheaper? ..... 더싼 거 있어요? ....	169
Is there anything else you need? ..... 또 필요한 거 없으세요? ....	159
Is there anything else? ..... 다른 거 없어요? ....	173
Is there something other than airplanes? ..... 비행기 말고 다른 거 있어요? ....	197
Is there something other than coffee? ..... 커피 말고 다른 거 있어요? ....	197
Is there something other than that? ..... 저거 말고 다른 거 있어요? ....	197
Is there something other than this? ..... 이거 말고 다른 거 있어요? ....	197
Isn't this delicious? ..... 이거 맛있지 않아요? ....	265
Isn't this fun? ..... 이거 재미있지 않아요? ....	265
Isn't this similar? ..... 이거 비슷하지 않아요? ....	265
Isn't this strange? ..... 이거 이상하지 않아요? ....	265
It depends on the price. .... 가격에 따라 달라요. ....	197
It depends on the region. .... 지역에 따라 달라요. ....	197
It depends on the weight. .... 무게에 따라 달라요. ....	197
It doesn't take long. .... 얼마 안 걸려요. ....	87
It is still a ways away. .... 아직 멀었어요. ....	83
It takes a long time. .... 오래 걸려요. ....	87
It takes about 30 minutes. .... 30분쯤 걸려요. ....	87
It takes about an hour. .... 1시간쯤 걸려요. ....	87
It was really clean. .... 진짜 깨끗했어요. ....	265
It would be nice if the deposit is 10 million won and the monthly rent is 500,000 won. ..... 보증금 1,000만 원에 월세 50만 원 정도면 좋겠어요. ....	113

It would be nice if there is no deposit and the monthly rent is around 600,000 won. ..... 보증금 없고 월세 60만 원 정도면 좋겠어요. ....	113
It's a little expensive. .... 좀 비싸요. ....	169
It's really nice. .... 진짜 좋아요. ....	265
It'll be fine. .... 괜찮을 거예요. ....	257
It'll be delicious. .... 맛있을 거예요. ....	257
It'll be fun. .... 재미있을 거예요. ....	257
It's a big brown bag. .... 갈색 큰 가방이에요. ....	231
It's a black leather bag. .... 검은색 가죽 가방이에요. ....	231
It's a little pricey, so please show me a cheap one. ..... 조금 비싸니까싼 걸로 보여주세요. ....	214
It's a small red bag. .... 빨간색 작은 가방이에요. ....	231
It's a white fabric-based bag. ..... 흰색 천 가방이에요. ....	231
It's been a week. .... 일주일 됐어요. ....	223
It's been about an hour. .... 1시간쯤 됐어요. ....	223
It's been three days. .... 3일 됐어요. ....	223
It's hot, so please turn on the air conditioner. ..... 더우니까 에어컨을 켜 주세요. ....	214
It's really delicious. .... 진짜 맛있어요. ....	265
I've been coughing since a few days ago. ..... 며칠 전부터 기침이 나오. ....	207
I've been working out but I'm not losing weight. ..... 운동했지만 살이 안 빠져요. ....	188
I've listened to this music a few times. ..... 이 음악을 몇 번 들어 봤어요. ....	264
I've tried this food a few times. ..... 이 음식을 몇 번 먹어 봤어요. ....	264

[ J ]

Just the coffee and juice, please. ..... 커피하고 주스만 주세요. ....	159
--	-----

[ L ]

Let me explain it. .... 제가 설명해 드릴게요. ....	257
Let me help you. .... 제가 도와 드릴게요. ....	257
Let's go now. .... 지금 갑시다. ....	109
Let's meet there. .... 거기에서 봐요. ....	151
Let's talk about it tomorrow! .... 내일 얘기해요! ....	143

[ M ]

My head hurts and my neck hurts. ..... 머리도 아프고 목도 아파요. ....	206
My phone and passport are in it. ..... 핸드폰하고 여권이 있어요. ....	231
My phone is in it. .... 핸드폰이 있어요. ....	231

My shoulder has been hurting since last year. ..... 작년부터 어깨가 아파요. ....	207
---	-----

[ N ]

Nice to meet you. I'll be sure to contact you next time. ..... 반갑습니다. 다음에 꼭 연락할게요. ....	196
No water comes out. .... 물이 안 나와요. ....	219
No, I am a student. .... 아니요, 학생이에요. ....	86
No, I'm Canadian. .... 아니요, 캐나다 사람이예요. ....	86
No, I'm fine. .... 아니요, 괜찮아요. ....	163
No, I'm not good at it. .... 아니예요, 잘 못해요. ....	83
No. .... 아니요. ....	75
Nothing is in it. .... 아무것도 없어요. ....	231

[ O ]

Of course. .... 그럼요. ....	117
OK. .... 그래요. ....	135
OK. Let's drink coffee together! ..... 그래요. 같이 커피 마셔요! ....	138
OK. Let's eat together! ..... 그래요. 같이 밥 먹어요! ....	138
Once you apply, you can start right away. ..... 신청하면 바로 시작할 수 있어요. ....	112
One moment. .... 잠시만요. ....	117
One way? .... 편도로 가실 거예요? ....	245

[ P ]

Passport, please. .... 여권 주세요. ....	105
Photo, please. .... 사진 주세요. ....	105
Please, calculate it separately. ..... 따로 계산해 주세요. ....	163
Please, call me at 6 pm. ..... 저녁 6시에 연락해 주세요. ....	181
Please, come back again. .... 다시 오세요. ....	203
Please, come quickly. .... 빨리 와 주세요. ....	219
Please, come within a week as refunds are not accepted after one week. 일주일 이 지나면 환불할 수 없으니까 일주일 안에 오세요. ....	214
Please, send an email when you want to contact me. ..... 저한테 연락할 때 이메일을 보내 주세요. ....	222
Please, contact me when he leaves later. ..... 이따가 출발할 때 연락해 주세요. ....	219
Please, cut it so that it is not too big. ..... 너무 크지 않게 잘라 주세요. ....	180
Please, cut it so that it is not too long. ..... 너무 길지 않게 잘라 주세요. ....	180
Please, cut it so that it is not too short. ..... 너무 짧지 않게 잘라 주세요. ....	180

Please, cut it so that it is not too thick. ..... 너무 두껍지 않게 잘라 주세요. ....	180
Please, cut/trim it. .... 잘라 주세요. ....	177
Please, give me two. .... 두 개 주세요. ....	163
Please, give me ... .... ...을/를 주세요. ....	101
Please, go this way. .... 이쪽으로 가세요. ....	79
Please, go up the stairs. .... 계단으로 가세요. ....	79
Please, go via the elevator. .... 엘리베이터로 가세요. ....	79
Please, go via the escalator. .... 에스컬레이터로 가세요. ....	79
Please, heat up the bread so that it is warm. ..... 따뜻하게 빵을 데워 주세요. ....	180
Please, make it spicy. .... 맵게 만들어 주세요. ....	180
Please, pack it separately. .... 따로 포장해 주세요. ....	163
Please, place it here. .... 여기에 놓아 주세요. ....	181
Please, put it in the refrigerator. ..... 냉장고에 넣어 주세요. ....	181
Please, remove the cucumber. .... 오이 빼고 주세요. ....	129
Please, remove the garlic. .... 마늘 빼고 주세요. ....	129
Please, remove the mushrooms. ..... 버섯 빼고 주세요. ....	129
Please, remove the onion. .... 양파 빼고 주세요. ....	129
Please, say "one, two, three" when taking pictures. ..... 사진을 찍을 때 "하나, 둘, 셋"이라고 말해 주세요. ....	222
Please, set aside the ice. .... 얼음을 따로 주세요. ....	163
Please, set aside the sugar. .... 설탕을 따로 주세요. ....	163
Please, show it to me. .... 저한테 보여 주세요. ....	109
Please, show me your hats. .... 모자 좀 보여 주세요. ....	215
Please, show me your pants. .... 바지 좀 보여 주세요. ....	215
Please, show me your scarves. ..... 스카프 좀 보여 주세요. ....	215
Please, show me your sneakers. ..... 운동화 좀 보여 주세요. ....	215
Please, speak out loudly. ..... 크게 말해 주세요. ....	180
Please, speak slowly when speaking in Korean. ..... 한국어로 얘기할 때 천천히 얘기해 주세요. ....	222
Please, take a seat over here. ... 여기 앉으세요. ....	125
Please, take your time. ..... 천천히 보세요. ....	117
Please, tell me in detail. ..... 자세히 말해 주세요. ....	219
Please, try not to make it spicy when cooking Korean food. ..... 한국 음식을 만들 때 맵지 않게 해 주세요. ....	222
Please, turn on the air conditioner so that it is cool. ..... 시원하게 에어컨을 틀어 주세요. ....	180
Please, write your name and contact information here. ..... 여기에 이름하고 연락처를 써 주세요. ....	227

[ R ]

Read books and talk to people. ..... 책을 읽고 사람들과 얘기해 보세요. ....	206
Really? ..... 그래요? .....	109
Register as a member and make a reservation online. ..... 회원 가입하고 인터넷으로 예약하세요. ....	206
Roundtrip? ..... 왕복으로 가실 거예요? .....	245

[ S ]

See you tomorrow. (lit. I'll meet you tomorrow.) ..... 내일 봐요, 내일 만나요. ....	135
Seven o'clock, please. .... 7시에 부탁드립니다. ....	241
Shall I book a ticket? ..... 제가 표를 예매할까요? .....	138
Shall I buy the meal? ..... 제가 밥을 살까요? .....	138
Shall I contact my friends? ..... 제가 친구들한테 연락할까요? .....	138
Shall I tell you first? ..... 제가 먼저 말할까요? .....	138
Shall we drink coffee together? ..... 우리 같이 커피 마실까요? .....	138
Shall we eat together? ..... 우리 같이 밥 먹을까요? .....	138
Shall we take a walk together? ..... 우리 같이 산책할까요? .....	138
Should I wait for him for a long time? ..... 많이 기다려야 돼요? .....	219
Since 3 days ago. .... 3일 전부터요. ....	203
Since when have you had these symptoms? ..... 언제부터 그랬어요? .....	203
Sorry. .... 죄송합니다. ....	125
Sorry. We don't. .... 죄송합니다. 안 됩니다. ....	173
Sounds good. .... 좋아요. ....	135
Sounds good. Let's go for a walk together! ..... 좋아요. 같이 산책해요! .....	138

[ T ]

Take the medicine and make sure you rest well. ..... 약을 먹고 꼭 쉬세요. ....	206
Take ... on the opposite side. ..... 반대쪽에서 타세요. ....	75
Take the train on the opposite side. ..... 반대쪽에서 타세요. ....	79
(You should) Take these stairs. (lit. Go to these stairs.) ..... 이 계단으로 가세요. ....	75
Thank you. .... 고맙습니다. ....	91
Thank you. I'll invite you to my house next time. ..... 감사합니다. 다음에 제가 집에 초대할게요. ....	196
Thank you. Next time I will buy the meal. ..... 감사합니다. 다음에 제가 밥을 살게요. ....	196
Thanks for listening to me. ..... 얘기 들어 줘서 고마워요. ....	147

Thanks for saying that. .... 그렇게 말해 줘서 고마워요. ....	147
Thanks for your call. .... 전화해 줘서 고마워요. ....	147
Thanks for your concern. .... 걱정해 줘서 고마워요. ....	147
The bag is too heavy. .... 가방이 너무 무거워요. ....	257
The battery is about to die. I'll call you back. ..... 배터리가 다 됐어요. 제가 다시 전화할게요. ....	155
The clothes are small, so please give me a larger one. ..... 옷이 작으니까 큰 옷으로 주세요. ....	214
The total is 15,000 won. ..... 전부 15,000원입니다. ....	159
The weather is nice and the food is delicious. ..... 날씨도 좋고 음식도 맛있어요. ....	206
Then could you take care of my bag? ..... 가방 좀 맡아 주시겠어요? ....	237
There are a lot of people on the weekends, but there are not many people on the weekdays. ..... 주말에 사람이 많지만 주중에 사람이 많지 않아요. ....	188
There are many people on the weekend, right? ..... 주말에 사람이 많죠? ....	189
There is another incoming call. I'll call you back. ..... 다른 전화가 와요. 제가 다시 전화할게요. ....	155
There isn't a single piece of bread. ..... 빵이 하나도 없습니다. ....	162
There isn't a single hat. .... 모자가 한 개도 없습니다. ....	162
There isn't a single student. .... 학생이 한 명도 없습니다. ....	162
There'll be no problem. .... 문제 없을 거예요. ....	257
There's no men's restroom on the 2nd floor, but there's a women's restroom. ..... 2층에 남자 화장실이 없지만 여자 화장실이 있어요. ....	188
These shoes are very popular these days, so please try them on. ..... 이런 신발이 요즘 인기가 많으니까 한번 신어 보세요. ....	214
This color suits you well, so please give it a try. ..... 이 색이 손님한테 잘 어울리니까 한번 입어 보세요. ....	214
This design is very popular. ..... 이 디자인이 인기가 많아요. ....	169
This is my first time. .... 이번에 처음 왔어요. ....	86
This is popular, so please give it a try. ..... 이게 인기가 많으니까 한번 써 보세요. ....	214
This is the cheapest. .... 이게 제일 싼 거예요. ....	169
This is the house. .... 이 집이에요. ....	109
This much. .... 이 정도요. ....	177
Three slices of bread too, please. ..... 그리고 빵도 세 개 주세요. ....	159
Tomorrow, please. .... 내일 부탁드립니다. ....	241
(It's) too big. Do you have a smaller one? ..... 너무 커요. 더 작은 거 있어요? ....	172
(It's) too dark. Do you have something brighter? ..... 너무 어두워요. 더 밝은 거 있어요? ....	172
(It's) too expensive. Do you have anything cheaper? ..... 너무 비싸요. 더 싼 거 있어요? ....	172

(You speak) too fast. Could you please speak slowly? ..... 너무 빨라요. 천천히 말해 주세요. ....	70
(It's) too heavy. Do you have something lighter? ..... 너무 무거워요. 더 가벼운 거 있어요? ....	172
Transfer at the City Hall station. ..... 시청역에서 갈아타세요. ....	79

[ W ]

We have everything. .... 뭐든지 다 있습니다. ....	162
We haven't decided yet. .... 아직 안 정했어요. ....	143
We will contact you. .... 연락 드릴게요. ....	227
Welcome. ....어서 오세요. ....	117
What are you going to do this weekend? ..... 이번 주말에 뭐 할 거예요? ....	146
What are you looking for? .... 뭐 찾으세요? ....	211 215
What are you using this for? ..... 이거 뭘로 쓰는 거예요? ....	248
What brings you here? ..... 어떻게 오셨어요? ....	203
What can you drink? .... 뭐 마셔요? ....	249
What can you eat? .... 뭐 먹어요? ....	249
What coffee would you like? ..... 무슨 커피를 드시겠어요? ....	196
What did you do when you got lost? ..... 길을 잃어버렸을 때 어떻게 했어요? ....	222
What do I do if I have an accident? ..... 사고가 나면 어떻게 해요? ....	249
What do I do if I don't have cash? ..... 현금이 없으면 어떻게 해요? ....	249
What do I do if I can't understand Korean? ..... 한국어를 못 알아들으면 어떻게 해요? ....	249
What do I do if the weather is bad? ..... 날씨가 안 좋으면 어떻게 해요? ....	249
What do you do? .... 무슨 일 하세요? ....	87
What do you usually do on the weekends? ..... 보통 주말에 뭐 해요? ....	206
What does this mean? .... 이게 무슨 뜻이에요? ....	181
What does this signify? .... 이게 무슨 의미예요? ....	181
What house are you looking for? ..... 어떤 집을 찾고 있어요? ....	113
What if I can't get up in the morning? ..... 아침에 일어날 수 없으면 어떡해요? ....	207
What if I can't sleep? .... 잠이 안 오면 어떡해요? ....	207
What if I have allergies? ..... 알레르기가 있으면 어떡해요? ....	207
What if I keep having a fever? ..... 계속 열이 나면 어떡해요? ....	207
What is the meal that you eat for breakfast? ..... 아침에 먹는 음식이 뭐예요? ....	248

What is this being made with?	이거 뭘로 만드는 거예요?	248
What is this in English?	이게 영어로 뭐예요?	181
What is this in Korean?	이게 한국어로 뭐예요?	181
What is this made of?	이거 뭘로 만들어요?	125
What kind of bag is it?	어떤 가방이에요?	227 231
What movie would you like to see?	무슨 영화를 보시겠어요?	196
What music would you like to listen to?	무슨 음악을 들으시겠어요?	196
What one?	어떤 거요?	241
What sells well these days?	요즘 많이 팔리는 게 뭐예요?	121
What should I do if I can't understand Korean?	한국어를 못 알아들을 때 어떻게 해야 해요?	222
What should I do if I have a problem?	문제가 생겼을 때 어떻게 해야 해요?	222
What should I do with this food?	이 음식을 어떻게 할까요?	181
What should I do?	어떻게 해야 돼요?	227
What time does the bus come by?	몇 시에 버스가 있어요?	71
What time is the returning ship?	돌아오는 배가 몇 시에 있어요?	245
What time should I contact you?	몇 시에 연락할까요?	181
What would you like?	뭐 드릴까요?	163
What's popular these days?	요즘 인기가 많은 게 뭐예요?	121
What's the most expensive dish at this restaurant?	이 집에서 뭐가 제일 비싸요?	129
What's the most popular dish at this restaurant?	이 집에서 뭐가 제일 인기가 많아요?	129
What's the spiciest at this restaurant?	이 집에서 뭐가 제일 매워요?	129
What's your contact information?	연락처가 어떻게 되세요?	241
What's your occupation?	직업이 어떻게 되세요?	241
What's favorably received these days?	요즘 평이 좋은 게 뭐예요?	121
What's inside the bag?	가방 안에 뭐가 있어요?	227 231
What's on sale these days?	요즘 많이 세일하는 게 뭐예요?	121
What's the tastiest dish at this restaurant?	이 집에서 뭐가 제일 맛있어요?	129
What's your name?	성함이 어떻게 되세요?	237 241
When did it break?	언제 고장 났어요?	223
When did you come to Korea?	언제 한국에 오셨어요?	86

When did you first come to Seoul?	언제 처음 서울에 오셨어요?	86
When did you start studying Korean?	언제 한국어 공부를 시작하셨어요?	86
When is the day that the friend is coming from your hometown?	고향에서 친구가 오는 날이 언제예요?	248
When will you start studying Korean?	언제 한국어 공부를 시작할 거예요?	146
When you're ready, you can leave right away.	준비되면 바로 출발할 수 있어요.	112
When?	언제요?	241
Where are you now?	지금 어디에 있어요?	151
Where at school are you?	학교 어디에 있어요?	155
Where at the subway station are you?	지하철역 어디에 있어요?	155
Where did you enjoy the best?	어디가 제일 좋았어요?	261
Where do I buy the ticket? Please let me know.	어디에서 표를 사요? 알려 주세요.	70
Where do you buy it?	어디에서 사요?	79
Where do you get on?	어디에서 타요?	79
Where in Seoul do you live?	서울 어디에 살아요?	155
Where is the bathroom?	화장실이 어디예요?	71
Where is the bus station?	버스 정류장이 어디예요?	71
Where is the help desk?	안내 데스크가 어디예요?	71
Where is the place that you go for a walk alone every day?	매일 혼자 산책하는 곳이 어디예요?	248
Where is the ticket sales counter?	매표소가 어디예요?	71
Where will you meet your friends?	어디에서 친구를 만날 거예요?	146
Where would you like me to place this stuff?	이 물건을 어디에 놓을까요?	181
Where would you like to send it?	어디로 보내실 거예요?	193
Which bus goes to ...? (lit. What bus number goes to ...?)	몇 번 버스가 ...에 가요?	67
Which number exit are you at?	몇 번 출구에 있어요?	151
Which one has the best review?	이 중에서 뭐가 제일 후기가 좋아요?	172
Which one is the cheapest?	이 중에서 뭐가 제일 싸요?	172
Which one is the most popular?	이 중에서 뭐가 제일 인기가 많아요?	172
Which one is the strongest?	이 중에서 뭐가 제일 튼튼해요?	172
Which station do I get off at?	어느 역에서 내려요?	79

Which station do I make a transfer at? 어느 역에서 갈아타요?	79
Who is the person that is smiling in this photo? 이 사진에서 웃고 있는 사람이 누구예요?	248
Why did you come to Korea? 왜 한국에 오셨어요?	105
Would you like a receipt? 영수증 드릴까요?	163
Would you like to send it by airmail? 비행기로 보내시겠어요?	193
Would you like to send it by ship? 배로 보내시겠어요?	193

[ Y ]

Yes, I am Korean. 네, 한국 사람이에요.	86
Yes, it is on the second floor. 네, 2층에 있어요.	95
Yes, it is over there. 네, 저기에 있어요.	95
Yes, it's behind that building 네, 저 건물 뒤에 있어요.	95
Yes, there are a lot of people on the weekends. 네, 주말에 사람이 많아요.	189
Yes, there are lockers. 네, 사물함이 있어요.	189
Yes, we are closed on holidays. 네, 휴일에 문을 닫아요.	189
Yes, we do. 네, 됩니다.	173
Yes, you can. 네, 됩니다.	173
Yes. 네.	83
You are open on Saturdays too, right? 토요일에도 하죠?	185
You can buy it anytime. 언제든지 살 수 있습니다.	162
You can buy it at the entrance. 입구에서 사세요.	79
You can get off at Gangnam station. 강남역에서 내리세요.	79
You can go anywhere. 어디든지 갈 수 있습니다.	162
You can make a reservation right away by calling. 전화하면 바로 예약할 수 있어요.	112
You have to go about 500m. 500m쯤 가면 돼요.	95
You have to go for around ten minutes. 10분쯤 가면 돼요.	95
You must apply by today. 오늘까지 신청해야 돼요.	120
You must be ready by next week. 다음 주까지 준비해야 돼요.	120
You must sign up by tomorrow. 내일까지 가입해야 돼요.	120

You must wait until this month. 이번 달까지 기다려야 돼요.	120
You speak Korean well. 한국말을 잘하세요.	83
You'll see ... ...이/가 보여요.	91

[ etc. ]

60,000 won per month. 한 달에 6만 원이에요.	117
--	-----

2<sup>nd</sup>  
edition

# Korean made easy

for **Everyday Life**

- “This book is a great resource for English speakers trying to learn Korean on their own... The book is written in a very thorough manner with an intuitive, easy-to-read structure... I would recommend this book wholeheartedly to English speakers who are taking on the daunting, but always satisfying, the task of learning Korean!”

**Shannon Heit** *ESL Instructor and KSL (Korean as a Second Language) Student, USA*

- “As a former ESL instructor and KSL student I know the value of a well-written and engaging text. Filled with practical dialogues, students will learn conversation through common situational encounters... With ***Korean Made Easy for Everyday Life*** Seung-eun Oh has created a winning formula which that stands apart from the grammar-centric textbooks commonly in use. ***Korean Made Easy for Everyday Life*** is an essential tool for anyone teaching or learning Korean.”

**Hans H. Urdahl** *Former Academic Director of ELS Kangnam, and former ESL instructor at Kyungwon College, Canada*

- “It is structured with conversation practices, grammar and vocabulary focus, quizzes, flashback revisions, and pronunciation tips so that readers can understand and remember better. The beauty of this book is that it does not only focus on learning the Korean expression but the Director’s commentary section also provides insights and information on the Korean lifestyle and culture. This book will come in handy if you are interested in Korean culture and would love to learn the Korean language in a fun and interesting way.”

**Tan Meng Song William** *Administrative Officer in Singapore Embassy in Seoul, Singapore*

- “***Korean Made Easy for Everyday Life*** offers a comprehensive crash course in Korean... The book is well designed for self-study and there are good exercises for practice on one’s own, making it the perfect preparation guide to life in Korea.”

**Paul Kerry** *Newspaper copy editor, United Kingdom*